00086017

BOMBAY BRANCH

OF THE

Royal Asiatic Society.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 15 June, 2016

NEW

TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

AFRICA.

NEW

TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

86017

AFRICA,

BY THE WAY OF

THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE,

IN THE YEARS 1783, 84 AND 85.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH OF LE VAILLANT,

ILLUSTRATED WITH A MAP, DELINEATING THE ROUTE OF HIS PRESENT AND FORMER TRAVELS, AND WITH TWENTY-TWO OTHER COPPER-PLATES.

IN THREE VOLUMES.

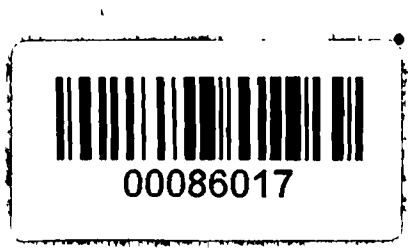
VOL. III.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR G. G. AND J. ROBINSON,

PATERNOSTER-ROW.

1796.


00086017

TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

AFRICA.

COUNTRY OF THE GREATER AND LESS NIMIQUAS.

HAVING fixed the 6th of January for my departure, the chief of the Nimiqua horde, near which I was encamped, came on the day appointed, with his wife and ſiſter, to take leave of me. His ſiſter had a pretty little monkey, the belly of which was white, and the reſt of the body of a greeniſh colour. This charming animal was the firſt of its ſpecies I had

ſeen; and I wiſhed much to have it in my poſſeſſion to add to my collection; but it was ſo dear to its miſtreſs, that I durſt not venture to aſk it of her. Every time ſhe came to viſit me, ſhe brought it along with her; and, before ſhe entered my tent, ſhe tied it to one of the ſtakes, that it might play with Kees. I was always fond of treating it with ſome dainty; but ſcarcely would my back be turned, when Kees, ſtronger and more miſchievous, would open its mouth by force, and take from its pouches what I had given it. Its miſtreſs, highly delighted with this trick, would laugh moſt immoderately. She would then run to her favourite, load him with careſſes, as if to conſole him, and requeſt me to make him amends by ſome other preſent; while Kees, afraid of being forced to reſtore what he had robbed, would ſave himſelf by flight.

The attachment which this woman had to her monkey was a real paſſion. Her whole happineſs ſeemed to be centred in it. A hundred times, while we were talking together, would ſhe interrupt the converſation to kiſs it; and yet when ſhe ſaw me about to depart, to my great ſurpriſe, ſhe ſnatched it up ſuddenly,

and

and, having kiſſed it over and over with the utmoſt tenderneſs, threw it upon my ſhoulder, and bid me keep it. Was this inconſtancy or indifference? The careſſes ſhe beſtowed upon it before ſhe gave it me prove that it was neither. She conjectured, that it would afford me great pleaſure to poſſeſs the animal; and, without farther ceremony, ſhe detached herſelf from it in my favour.

My plan was to repair to a horde of the Koraquas, eſtabliſhed at the diſtance of fourteen or fifteen leagues farther to the north-eaſt. Twelve perſons, men and women, of that which I was going to leave, joined themſelves to my caravan, and ſerved me as guides. We propoſed to halt on the banks of a river, ſituated four leagues and a half from our point of departure; but we found the bed of it occupied by a herd of more than an hundred buffaloes, which my dogs rouſed, and which fled from us on the oppoſite ſide.

It is always a bad omen to meet with theſe animals, in the deſerts, during times of drought; for, as they live always in large herds, and take up their abode in the beds of the rivers, they ſoon exhauſt what little water —

might otherwiſe be left in them. In this, therefore, we did not find a ſingle drop.

After we had reſted, we reſumed our march, following their track; both with a view that they might not exhauſt the other reſervoirs, which we knew we ſhould ſoon ſtand in need of, and that we might, if poſſible, kill ſome of them. Towards evening we came up with them, at the diſtance of five leagues farther on the banks of the river; and as the buſhes with which the country was covered retarded their progreſs, and concealed us from their ſight, we were able, by the aſſiſtance of our dogs, to approach them, and to kill two.

They were in nothing different from the other buffaloes which I had met with in the eaſtern part of Africa, except that they were of a monſtrous ſize. In no part had I ever ſeen any equal to them.

Two animals of ſuch a bulk enſured proviſions in abundance for my whole company; but, as the cutting them up would require an entire day, I deferred that labour till the next morning. At break of day my people began their work; and, in the mean time, that I might conciliate the friendſhip of the Kpraquas, whoſe

whoſe horde I intended to viſit, I diſpatched meſſengers to inform them that, if they choſe to partake of my game, I would give them a ſhare of it with the greateſt pleaſure.

In this manner, I here repeat it, muſt every traveller act who wiſhes to ſucceed in his plans. By ſuch means he will procure friends; and he will find no ſavages, however ferocious, whom he may not render tractable.

I muſt declare, to the honour of the Africans, that the farther you go from the colonies you will find among them more ſincerity and more affection. Thoſe who, on account of their diſtance, are neither known to, nor have an opportunity of knowing the Europeans, poſſeſs a ſimplicity highly engaging, and ſhow no miſtruſt but what is neceſſary to every reaſonable being, to guard againſt danger and preſerve his exiſtence.

Their character, it is true, diſplays more apathy, and their talents are more confined; but never having occaſion to deceive, and being alſo never expoſed to be deceived by others, they have no need of falſehood, and are unacquainted with it.

The Koraquas arrived in the afternoon, to

the number of thirty men and women, and brought with them ſome oxen to carry back the proviſions I had offered them. They paſſed the night with me; and, next morning, having cauſed their oxen to be loaded, I ſet out with them for their hordé, acroſs a ſcorched plain, the drieſt, perhaps, of all thoſe I had yet traverſed.

I every where obſerved giraffes; but, in a ſpace ſo extenſive, they had too much advantage over us; and, as I deſpaired of being able to get near them, I did not ſo much as think of purſuing them. Having, however, ſeen a rhinoceros, which, by the heavineſs of his flight, ſeemed likely to loſe ground, I reſolved to hunt him, and ſet out accordingly with Klaas. We galloped forwards full ſpeed, and had got within ſhot, when the horſe on which Klaas was mounted, ſuddenly ſtumbling, fell down, and threw him over his head to the diſtance of more than ten feet. By the effects of the fall, his fuſee went off at the ſame time; and it was only by the exploſion that I was informed of the accident.

I was then at about the diſtance of a hundred and fifty yards in a ſtraight line before him.

I haſtened

I haſtened towards him, as ſoon as I obſerved the accident, and, finding him motionleſs, imagined he was dead; but, on putting ſome volatile alkali to his noſe, his ſenſes returned; and, as he was now in a fair way of recovery, I left him to run after his horſe; and having caught it we rejoined our caravan.

An accident, but of a different kind, had happened among the reſt of my company. Two women, exhauſted by fatigue and the heat, had been taken ill; and it was found neceſſary to place them upon the oxen which I kept for that purpoſe, and which followed us in relays.

Though we had advanced but a little way, my colonial Hottentots were already quite worn out. Accuſtomed to the temperate climate of the Cape, theſe men, naturally indolent and timid, were unable to ſupport the ſcorching heat of the torrid zone to which we were approaching. Thoſe who during my firſt journey had, when circumſtances required, ſuſtained marches of twelve hours, found themſelves now ſo languid and weak after one of half the time, that they were not capable of advancing a ſtep farther. They ſaw me ex-

poſe myſelf to the ſame fatigue without complaining; but my example had no effect to raiſe their depreſſed courage.

They complained particularly of thirſt more than of any other evil. In vain did I exhort them to employ a remedy I had diſcovered, which was that of not drinking much, and of being contented with lapping a little water at a time, like my dogs. This would have been ſufficient to moiſten the ſalivary glands, and to keep the mouth cool; but their obſtinate ignorance would not ſuffer them to follow my directions. They drank to ſatisfy the preſent, and thought they could drink alſo to ſatisfy their future thirſt, without perceiving that the large quantity of liquid which they ſwallowed, after remaining on their ſtomachs like a load, and retarding their movements, ſoon went off again in an abundant perſpiration, which greatly weakened them, and threw them into a ſtate of general relaxation, the cauſe of which they unjuſtly aſcribed to the climate.

Beſides, all the water here being for the moſt part brackiſh, it occaſioned dyſenteries, which they rendered continual, by refuſing the only remedy we could employ to check them. They had

had already forgotten thoſe proteſtations of zeal, and thoſe ſolemn promiſes which they were ſo eager to make before my departure from Cape Orange; and the ſymptoms of diſcontent which they began to ſhow rendered me exceedingly unhappy.

To this cauſe of uneaſineſs was added another. On approaching the kraal, the remainder of the horde (thoſe, I mean, who were not in my company) came to meet me, but in a tumultuous manner, and without a leader. Their chief had died a little before; and, ſince that event, anarchy, diſorder, and confuſion had prevailed among them. They had aſſembled, indeed, to elect a ſucceſſor to the deceaſed; but, the perſon choſen having refuſed to accept the office, the horde had divided into two parties, one conſiſting of the men and the other of the women, each of whom had named a chief, ſo that they had three at once, none of whom, however, poſſeſſed ſufficient authority to terminate their diſſenſion. The reſult of this triple election was continual diſputes and wrangling. Battles, in which much blood was ſhed, took place every day; and theſe combats tended ſtill more to increaſe their animoſity.

Scarcely

Scarcely had they joined me, when they began to ſhow, by their conduct, how their affairs were ſituated. The whole horde, both thoſe who had arrived and thoſe who had accompanied me, no longer paid attention to any thing but their quarrel; and they endeavoured to intereſt me in it, though I knew not a ſingle word of their language. To ſee their warmth, one might have ſuppoſed that their election was a matter of importance to the whole world, and that the fate of mankind was about to depend on their chief. All ſpoke at the ſame time; each endeavoured to drown his neighbour's voice by his own; their eyes ſparkled with fury; and, amidſt this confuſion, while they threatened each other in turns, the noiſe they made became truly dreadful.

This inteſtine war among the ſavages afforded me a ſpectacle entirely new; and though it had rather an alarming appearance, it preſented ſomething intereſting to the obſervation of a traveller. The hope, indeed, which I entertained of ſettling their diſpute in an equitable manner, made ſome amends for the diſagreeableneſs of my ſituation by being conſtituted ſupreme judge in a cauſe of ſo much conſe-

conſequence. I had great reaſon to entertain a high idea of myſelf, as I was going, by a ſingle word, to be the founder or reſtorer of the greateſt power that one mortal can exerciſe over others.

I learned by my interpreters, that the deceaſed had left ſeveral ſons of ſufficient age to ſucceed him; and yet theſe ſons had been entirely forgotten; notwithſtanding what Kolben tells of the wonderful order which prevails, as to ſucceſſion, among the African tribes, and of the continuance of the crown in the reigning families. The courſe dictated to me by prudence, and the only one I could purſue under the preſent circumſtances, was to watch the different events likely to reſult from this ſcene, and to take advantage of that which I might think moſt favourable to my views. A fortunate circumſtance ſoon enabled me to carry my plan into execution.

Unarmed and without any precaution, though ſurrounded by this enraged multitude, I walked calmly along in the midſt of them; and, when we arrived at the kraal, I ordered my tent to be immediately formed, as if I had been ſurrounded by my friends and relations.

This

This appearance, raiſed ſuddenly, and as if by magic, before the eyes of the horde, with my fuſees, horſes, and tent, objects which were all new to them, filled them with admiration. Men, women, and children, motionleſs and with their mouths wide open, all ſtood looking at them with profound ſilence. Anger, hatred, and every violent paſſion, ſeemed by their countenances to be extinguiſhed, and to have given place to more tranquil emotions, to ignorant ſurpriſe, and ſtupid aſtoniſhment. This ſtate of calmneſs was juſt what I wiſhed for; and my whole attention was employed in prolonging it, in order that I might turn it to advantage.

Infancy is naturally curious; it is ſtruck with every thing it ſees; and the ſavage, in this reſpect, is only a grown up child. As theſe ſavages ſeemed to wiſh that I would permit them to examine more cloſely whatever excited their admiration, I readily condeſcended to gratify their deſire. They approached, ſurveyed, and handled every thing. But the principal object of general curioſity was my perſon. They ſeemed as if they would never be ſatisfied with looking at my dreſs. They

pulled off my hat, that they might the better examine my hair and my beard, which were long. They even half unbuttoned my clothes; and ſurpriſed to ſee my ſkin white, each felt it, as if deſirous to aſcertain that what they ſaw was real.

This comedy continued till the evening; and I did every thing in my power to prolong it. At length, when the moment of ſeparation arrived, I cauſed to be hinted to the whole company, that if, two hours after ſun-riſe next morning, they ſhould not be agreed reſpecting the choice of a chief, I would immediately leave them. I added, however, that if, on the other hand, they came and preſented to me a chief, elected by general conſent, I would then load them all with preſents, and beſtow on him a diſtinction, which would raiſe him above all his equals, and render the horde one of the moſt celebrated in the whole country. But what was my ſurpriſe when I learned the ſame evening, that on my head the burden of the crown was depoſed! Pretending to be alarmed at this intelligence, I took advantage of it, as I had intended, to reſtore perfect tranquillity; and I accordingly acquieſced, aſſuring

aſſuring them, that if they would promiſe to be obedient, I would give them the only chief worthy of ruling them, and of making them happy.

By means of my interpreters, I had acquired every information neceſſary to enable me to accompliſh my end with certainty. My principal aim was to learn the choice or inclination of the majority; and I hoped, when it was known, to give to the object of it a conſequence that ſhould be capable of ſtriking them. I ſucceeded according to my deſire. They named one Haripa, and I immediately proclaimed him chief.

The ſavage has ſtrong paſſions; his anger is violent, but it is of ſhort duration, and he ſoon returns to the natural mildneſs of his character. This I experienced on the preſent occaſion. The commotion of the horde ſubſided; and they peaceably retired, apparently diſpoſed to obey me.

I was ignorant whether the women, when they ſeparated, held any conference together; or whether my choice was agreeable to their wiſhes; but, at the appointed hour next morning, the whole horde appeared before me, with

Haripa at their head. He was a man about forty years of age, tall, well made, exceedingly ſtrong, and conſequently formed by nature for ruling the feeble multitude.

Before I proceeded to inſtall him, I deſired to know whether they were all agreed in acknowledging him; or if any one objected to his election. Being aſſured that they were unanimous, I ordered Klaas to approach. Klaas immediately advanced, holding in his hand one of thoſe grenadier caps given me by Colonel Gordon, and of which I have already ſpoken. He had bruſhed it with great care; and had poliſhed the copperplate in the front, which was ornamented with the arms of Holland, that is to ſay, a lion rampant, having in one of his fore-paws ſeven arrows, and in the other a naked ſabre.

This ſymbol could not fail to pleaſe theſe ſavages, as it exhibited a repreſentation of the weapons peculiar to them, and of the moſt formidable animal of their country, which I took care to point out to them. They teſtified their admiration in the moſt expreſſive manner; and imagined that, ſuperior to kings, I had by my almighty power made this work during

during the night, merely with a view to afford them pleaſure.

After this preparation, I commanded ſilence; and, cauſing the monarch to approach me, I placed the cap upon his head with great ſolemnity. I then affixed to the ſkin, which formed his dreſs, ſeveral rows of glaſs beads; gave him a girdle made of a ſtring of very large ones; ornamented his arms with tin bracelets, and ſuſpended from his neck a ſmall padlock, ſhaped like a butterfly, the key of which I had loſt. Such padlocks, made in the form of animals of every kind, are very common at the Cape. They come from China; and are brought to Africa by the captains of the Company's ſhips which trade in the Indian ſeas.

During the ceremony of inſtallation, the whole horde, dumb and motionleſs through admiration, ſeemed loſt in ecſtacy. Haripa himſelf, though highly gratified, did not dare to make the leaſt movement, and obſerved a gravity altogether riſible. When the inauguration was finiſhed, and he was completely dreſſed, I preſented him with a mirror, that he might enjoy the ſatisfaction of ſurveying his own figure. I then ſhewed him to the people,

who

who expreſſed their joy by ſhouts and applauſes without end.

Ye honeſt hearts, who peruſe this account, behold what it coſt me to reſtore peace among a whole tribe, and to prevent them from deſtroying each other! From this moment concord was re-eſtabliſhed; univerſal joy prevailed throughout the horde; and they inſtantly began their dancings, which continued for three days and three nights without intermiſſion. They killed for this feſtival ſeveral fat ſheep, and even two oxen; an extraordinary and truly aſtoniſhing magnificence among a people, who, when they barter one of their daughters for a cow, think they have made an excellent bargain.

If the Koraquas ſet ſuch a high value on their horned cattle, it is becauſe they are the principal part of their riches. They do not, however, make them an object of trade. Being too far diſtant from the colonies to have any commercial intercourſe with them, either directly or indirectly, they can traffic with their cattle only among themſelves or their neighbours.

When I wiſhed, therefore, to purchaſe a

ſufficient number for my waggons, to ſupply the place of thoſe I had loſt, I procured them at a price which made me even aſhamed. An ox coſt me only a ſmall bit of iron or a nail; and thoſe who had the good fortune to make ſuch an exchange were highly ſatisfied with their bargain.

I am fully convinced that, had I been deſirous to tempt them, by expoſing to their view certain trinkets, I might have got, without exception, every thing that belonged to the horde. This reminds me of the Indians I had ſeen at Surinam, who, forgetting in the morning that they muſt repoſe at night, will ſell their hammock for the end of a lighted wax-candle. Theſe people would not give the ſmalleſt article for a hundred weight of wax-candles in packets; but they are ſeduced by the ſplendour of one that is lighted. They are children who, to obtain any trifle that gives them pleaſure for the moment, will offer and readily reſign whatever they poſſeſs.

It is often from the ſame childiſh ſpirit that the ſavage is ſo ready to pilfer, and appropriate to his own uſe whatever he finds pleaſing or ſuited to his purpoſes. The Koraquas at-

tempted to carry away ſome of my effects, even before my face; and to prevent their rapacity, I was obliged either to watch over, or to depoſit them in ſome place of ſafety, where they could no longer afford temptation.

Theſe people are tall, and conſequently of greater ſtature than the Hottentots of the colonies. My Hottentots, for inſtance, reached only to their ſhoulders; but, notwithſtanding this difference of ſize, and that of their cheeks which are leſs prominent, and though their ſkins are blacker, I believe them to be deſcended from the ſame race. At any rate they have the ſame language and cuſtoms as the Nimiquas their neighbours, who are certainly of Hottentot extraction.

Their dreſs alſo is the ſame in form as that of the Nimiquas, though it differs in the ſubſtance, being compoſed of the ſkin of the hyæna, and particularly of that of the jackal, an animal found in great abundance in thoſe barren regions. With regard to the ſkins of the buffaloe and the giraffe, as they are too thick to be uſed for dreſſes, they employ them only to cover their huts.

As the exceſſive dryneſs of the country

renders ſprings very rare, the Koraquas would be unable to inhabit it, had they not found the means of remedying this ſcarcity of water. For this purpoſe, they dig in the earth a kind of ciſterns or rather wells, to which they deſcend gradually by ſteps; and theſe people are the only African nation among whom I ever found the ſame mark of induſtry.

As their wells always contain little water, and as none is to be loſt, they take care to ſecure it even from the birds, by cloſing up the mouth of the hole with ſtones and the branches of trees; ſo that, unleſs one knows the ſpot, it is impoſſible to find it. They go down into it every day, to fetch up as much water as may be neceſſary for the conſumption of their people and cattle. They draw it in a kind of veſſels, made of a piece of hollowed wood, and pour it into the ſkins of buffaloes or giraffes, placed in a concave form on the ground to hold it; but they diſtribute it with the utmoſt parſimony, and never draw more than they abſolutely have occaſion for.

Notwithſtanding this ſtrict economy, the wells often become dry, and in that caſe the horde is obliged to remove to ſome other place.

Among all the weſtern tribes, therefore, there are none who lead ſo wandering a life as the Koraquas: the conſequence of which is, that, as they often change their abode, and acquire new neighbours, they muſt, in ſome meaſure, adopt the cuſtoms of the nations near which they fix their reſidence. Some tribes of them greaſe themſelves like the Hottentots; while others tattoo their face, breaſt, and arms, after the manner of the Caffres. It is, however, to be remarked, that the ſame colour is not employed by all the Koraquas. Each has his own, according as caprice may direct him in his choice, and it generally varies every day; which renders, as one may ſay, the inhabitants of the ſame horde ſtrangers to each other, and gives them a motley appearance, as if they were dreſſed for a maſquerade.

After the accident of my wound in the horde of Klaas Baſter, by a prickly geranium, I always took care, when I encamped in a new ſpot, to cauſe all thoſe I could find around me to be torn up. Among thoſe which we had occaſion to deſtroy, near Haripa's kraal, I found a moſt ſuperb one, with three long prickles, a figure of which ſhall be given,

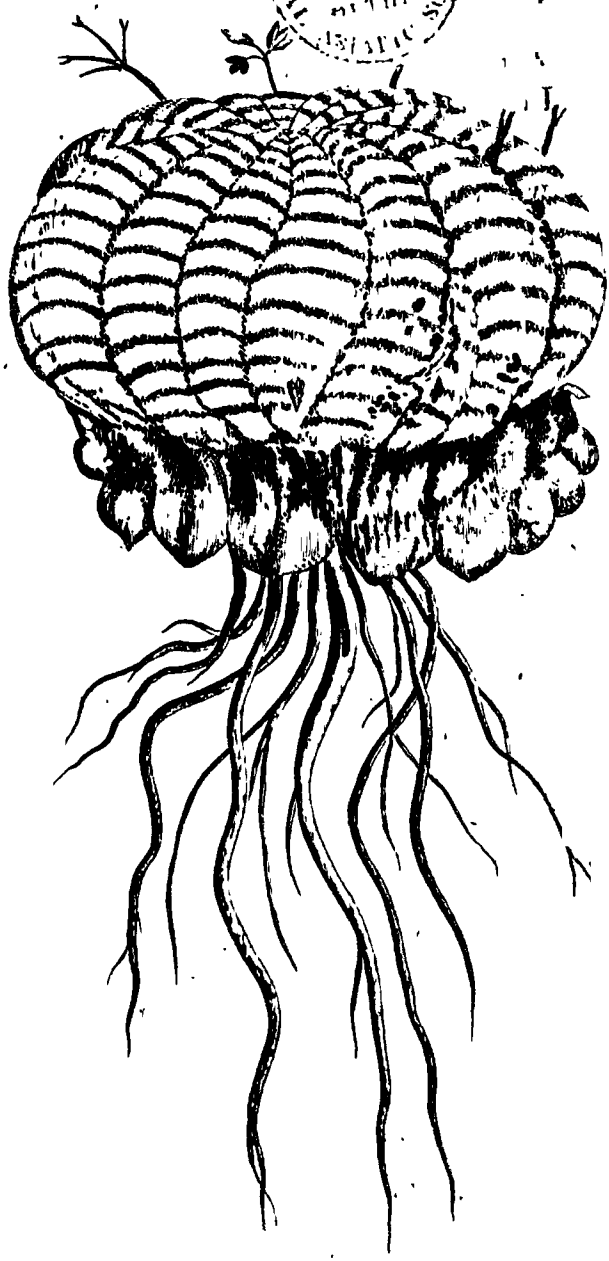
when I publiſh an account of the new plants I collected in the courſe of my travels.

I found alſo, in the ſame neighbourhood, two new ſpecies of euphorbia, engravings of which are annexed. The firſt, which I call the melon-ribbed euphorbia, does not riſe more than three or four inches from the ground, to which it adheres by a collection of fibrous roots, iſſuing from ſeveral tubercles diſpoſed in the manner of a crown. The ſtem forms a flatted globe excavated at the ſummit, and has ribs like the apple which we call in France *calville blanche*. Theſe ribs are elevated, thick, and convex, have a greeniſh colour, and are marked with brown tranſverſal bands. From the ſummit of the ribs iſſue ſeveral little tufts of pedunculate flowers.

I gave the name of the caterpillar-euphorbia to the ſecond, becauſe, when I firſt found it, I thought I ſaw on it ſeveral beautiful hairy caterpillars. The deſcription of it in a few words is as follows: From a very large tuberous root, which here and there throws out a few thready fibres, iſſue ſeveral ſtalks almoſt of the length of the finger: they creep along the ground, are twiſted, woody, deſtitute of leaves,

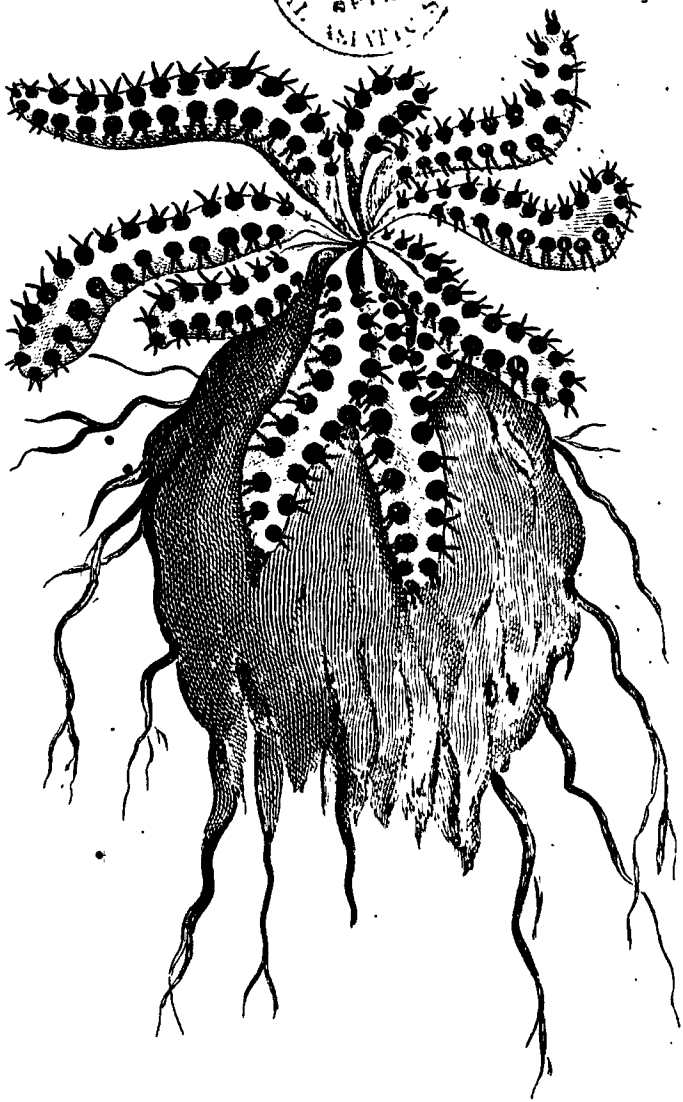
and

ASIATIC SOCIETY



MELON-RIBBED-EUPHORBIA.

ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY
OF THE
BOTANY
BRANCH
OF THE
ASIATIC SOCIETY



CATERPILLAR-EUPHORBIA.

and furniſhed with ſeveral rows of round tubercles, each guarded by two prickles.

Both theſe kinds of euphorbuim are to be dreaded; becauſe, being low and mixed with the herbage like muſhrooms, animals, as they feed, run the riſk of eating them with their paſture.

Though this part of the country is dry and barren, it affords an abundant variety of plants, from which an expert botaniſt might have derived more benefit than I did. I, however, made a great number of drawings of the moſt remarkable objects; engravings from which I intend to publiſh hereafter.

During my reſidence with this horde, I obſerved large flocks of cranes and paroquets paſs regularly over our heads every day, from north-weſt to ſouth-eaſt. The latter appeared to me to be proceeding towards Caffraria; and they were perhaps of the ſpecies I had ſeen in that country. I diſtinguiſhed them by the continual chattering which they made during their flight, and by their manner of flying in pairs, male and female; but they were at ſo great a height that I could not kill any of them; and this was the caſe with all the birds of paſ-

ſage I had an opportunity of ſeeing. As the country had nothing to induce them to deſcend, none of them ſtopped. My hunting excurſions, therefore, were become tireſome; and my collections did not increaſe ſo much as I wiſhed.

With regard to the animals that were to ſupply the conſiderable conſumption made daily by my company, I could depend neither on giraffes, buffaloes, nor the rhinoceros, which, being too wild, could not be approached. My whole reſource, therefore, was in the antelopes; but, though I had in no part ſeen ſo many, and though they wandered here in immenſe flocks, I found it very difficult to get near them.

While under this embarraſſment, Haripa, who thought himſelf much indebted to me for the preſents I had given him, and who from gratitude and attachment accompanied me every where, promiſed, if I would follow his advice, and hunt after the Koraqua manner, to afford me an opportunity of killing, without quitting the ſpot, more game than would be ſufficient for all my company during a whole moon. This extraordinary promiſe appeared to

me exaggeration; but, as it was eaſy for me to aſcertain the truth of it, and as it afforded me the hopes of learning ſomething, perhaps, that I did not know, I conſented to make a trial.

Next morning, as ſoon as it was day, the chief ſent out fifty men to track on the hills and eminences ſituated on the ſouth ſide of the horde. About noon, one of them returned to give notice, that they had driven ſeveral flocks of antelopes together; that they now formed an immenſe body, moving towards the plain; and that they would not fail ſoon to make their appearance.

I immediately ſet out with Haripa, who poſted me in a defile of the plain, through which, as he conjectured from the direction purſued by the trackers, the antelopes muſt neceſſarily paſs; and indeed we had not long remained in this poſition when we ſaw, riſing from the ſides of the hills, clouds of duſt, which ſeemed every moment to extend themſelves and to become larger. He then deſired me to lie down on my belly, with my face towards the ground; and in this poſture, which appeared to me very little proper for hunting, I waited the event in ſilence.

The antelopes advanced full ſpeed, and did

not

not fail to direct their courſe towards us, as he had foreſeen. As the ſituation we had taken did not permit them to ſee us, they were not ſtartled, but proceeded forwards without altering their direction; when about two thouſand of them, however, had paſſed us, he roſe up, began to diſcharge his arrows, and deſired me to fire at the ſame time.

I was fully ſenſible that, when the herd was once put in motion, the antelopes in the rear would follow the reſt; and that, during the impreſſion of their fear which made them fly, and throw themſelves in crowds towards us, they would not be able to perceive us. I ſaw alſo that the ſavages, by diſpatching them ſilently with their arrows, ran no riſk of ſcaring them; but I was apprehenſive that, if I fired my fuſee, the exploſion might ſpread terror among them, and that they would then return the way they had come.

My apprehenſions, though founded in reaſon, were not verified. I fired repeatedly in all directions, but the column continued to advance as before; and fear produced on their ſheepiſh inſtinct no other effect than that of making them move on faſter.

I frequently poured the contents of my fuſee into

into the middle of this confuſed multitude, and each of my balls often brought down ſeveral of them at a time. Had I wiſhed for as many, I might eaſily have procured a hundred; and I ceaſed firing, merely becauſe ſuch a quantity of game would have been of no uſe to me.

Every time I diſcharged my piece at theſe antelopes, their rumps, immediately and at the ſame moment, all became white; and thoſe thouſands of red backs flying before me formed, as it were, one ſheet of ſnow, which ſeemed diſplayed only to diſappear again in an inſtant.

I have already ſpoken of that ſingular property of the ſpring-bock antelope, which has the faculty of changing at will the colour of its rump, which is red, and of making it ſuddenly become white, as if by a kind of enchantment. A phenomenon of this nature preſents at firſt to the mind ſomething marvellous; it is, however, ſtrictly true, and may be eaſily comprehended after the following explanation.

The long thick hair which covers the rump of the ſpring-bock antelope is, in general, of a tawny hue; but, though it appears to be entirely of that colour, it is only the ſurface that

is really ſo; for underneath it is of a pure white, and in its natural ſituation this part is entirely concealed. Now all the hair on the rump grows from a ſtrong tiſſue of muſcular fibres, by means of which the animal can, at pleaſure, extend or contract the ſkin; ſo that, when extended, the upper hair is laid flat to the right and left, and that below only, which is perfectly white, remains expoſed to view, and even covers the reſt. I cannot better deſcribe this operation, than by comparing it to the action of opening and ſhutting a book placed on its back.

Another fact, more difficult to be explained, is the prodigious multiplication of theſe antelopes in a country infeſted with carnivorous animals, which it every where produces. I had in other places met with a few of their numerous flocks; but, when I beheld this, I often wondered how ſo many thouſands of animals, which, by their number, muſt have dried up the ſtreams, and conſumed the paſturage of a whole diſtrict, could live in a place ſo barren and deſtitute of water. But though antelopes, as well as goats, have not the ſame need of drink as other animals, they doubtleſs com-

monly

monly inhabit more fertile cantons, and there were ſuch in the neighbourhood, as will preſently be ſeen. In ſhort, to give my readers an idea how numerous this herd was, I ſhall only ſay that, notwithſtanding the rapidity of its courſe, it employed three whole hours to paſs me.

In the relation of my firſt travels, I have mentioned this antelope under the name of the *gazelle de parade*—an appellation exceedingly well ſuited to it, as it ſeems to produce the change I have ſpoken of, merely for the purpoſe of ornamenting its rump with a ſplendid colour. On account of this denomination, I have been reproached by a Journaliſt with not having ſtudied the true principles of the zoological nomenclature; but the critic was doubtleſs ignorant, that the above name is one of thoſe given to this antelope at the Cape of Good-Hope, where the planters diſtinguiſh it by that of *pronk-bock* (the goat which adorns itſelf): it is known alſo by thoſe of the leaping goat, and the goat of paſſage. All theſe different denominations are derived from the habits of the animal; and, in my opinion, they are all preferable to thoſe ſtrange and barba-

rous

rous names, which preſent no analogy between them and the thing they expreſs. For ſurely the trueſt principles of nomenclature are thoſe which beſt paint the objects they are intended to make known.

I never ſaw any where ſo beautiful a breed of goats as among the Koraquas. I purchaſed ſeveral of them, which were added to my flock. When I paſſed through the diſtrict of the Twenty-four-Rivers, my friend Liewenberg had mentioned theſe animals, which he knew only by report, and he begged me, if I could, to bring him a male. Having found one that was really remarkable, both on account of its ſize and the length and breadth of its horns, I purchaſed it for my friend, at the expence of a nail of a moderate ſize, and a few glaſs beads.

With nails of different ſizes I in like manner procured twenty-one oxen for my waggons. The ſavages ſhewed the utmoſt avidity to obtain the ſmalleſt bits of iron, becauſe they ſerved to make points for their aſſagays or their arrows.

Notwithſtanding their great fondneſs for dreſs, they ſet more value on that metal than

on

on glaſs and copper beads, which furniſh them with ornaments. I am convinced, that for the iron work of the wheel of one of my carriages I ſhould have received a herd of an hundred head of oxen.

It was probable that Swanepoel, in my abſence, was employed on the banks of Orange-River, according to my orders, in procuring me a team or two. But even if he had not ſucceeded, which was very unlikely, I had, without his aſſiſtance, a ſufficient number to draw my carriages, in the oxen I had procured from the firſt hordes through which I had paſſed, and thoſe I had lately purchaſed. Being perfectly eaſy on this head, I was now in a condition to return to my camp and reſume my journey; and my ſecurity was ſo much the better founded, as, my new oxen being accuſtomed to the herbage of the diſtrict, I had no reaſon to apprehend that my progreſs would be interrupted by them, as it had been by the others.

A new plan, however, ſtill detained me, and ſuſpended my return. I had many times heard of a brave and warlike nation, dreaded by all the ſavages in general of theſe countries: I mean

mean that of the Houzouanas. Being neighbours to the Bushmen on the east, they are often confounded with these people; but they differ from them in their disposition, language, and manners: they are, besides, a wandering tribe; and, proceeding in their emigrations from the one sea to the other, they shut up, as one may say, that part of Africa, and form a barrier across its whole breadth.

A people so different from all those I had seen deserved to be known. My design was to secure their friendship, which was become absolutely necessary, either if, after returning to my camp, I should wish to resume my journey, or if I proceeded back to the Cape to begin it again.

I was told that I could not penetrate into their country without traversing those of other nations. Many of the men belonging to Haripa's horde proposed, however, to accompany me; and I accepted their offer, because I should have occasion for guides; but I would take only four, and I consequently sent back such of the Greater Nimiquas as had hitherto attended me. Haripa came with great ceremony to bid me farewel. Having wished him a numerous

merous progeny, a peaceful reign, and that the women might be more ſubmiſſive, I ſet out at break of day, to avoid the heat, and proceeded on my journey, with an intention of halting on the banks of a river five leagues diſtant from the horde, where, according to the account of my guides, I ſhould find as many rhinoceroſes as I might wiſh. The natives call this river *Fiſh-River*.

Though we had marched only a few hours, I remarked, in the ſmall ſpace we traverſed, a great change in the productions. On all ſides I beheld different plants and different animals; and this novelty aſtoniſhed me ſo much, that I reſolved to ſtop ſome time, in order to ſearch for and collect ſuch curious objects as might be worthy of my attention. There are ſome vegetables and animals to which nature ſeems to have excluſively aſſigned certain climates, and which are to be found no where elſe. Thus, for example, I did not begin to find giraffes till I arrived at the twenty-eighth degree of latitude; and it was only under the twenty-fifth that I found a kind of wild aſs, of an iſabella or pale-yellow colour.

This animal is, by the Greater Nimiquas,

called the white zebra: but it is certainly a wild aſs; for, inſtead of having a ſtriped ſkin like the zebra, it is of one colour, which has a yellow tinge. No animal in all Africa, perhaps, is ſo ſuſpicious, and ſo ſhy as this kind of aſs. It appears every where in large herds; but I could never get near enough to fire at any of them. I have, however, in my poſſeſſion a ſkin, which I purchaſed in a horde where it was employed to cover the hut of a ſavage. There are, therefore, three diſtinct ſpecies of the aſs in the ſouthern part of Africa: the zebra, the quagga, and the kind above mentioned, which is neither ſpotted nor ſtriped.

At the Cape, the zebra is known under the name of *ſtreep-ezel* (the ſtriped aſs), and the quagga under that of *wilde-paerd* (the wild horſe). In the colonies the names and the animals are ſometimes both confounded; which, in natural hiſtory, may occaſion errors, as has really happened; for the quagga has often been conſidered as the female of the zebra. But the quagga and the zebra are undoubtedly two different ſpecies, which, though they live in the ſame diſtrict, have no more inter-

intercourſe with each other than they have with the flocks of antelopes that inhabit thoſe regions.

Voſmaer, who never travelled in Africa, and who, conſequently, could know the quagga only from the accounts of others, pretends that it is a mixed breed, produced between the zebra and a wild horſe.

Falſe ideas are, in my opinion, entertained in Europe reſpecting the numerous ſuppoſed mixed breeds of deſert countries. It is believed that nothing there is more common; but this is certainly a very great error. Buffon himſelf, convinced of their multiplication in Africa, and endeavouring to explain the cauſe, aſcribes it to the heat of the climate; which rendering ſprings ſcarce, and giving occaſion ſometimes to animals of different ſpecies to aſſemble around water at the ſame time, favours ſuch extraordinary copulations.

By aſſertions like theſe, we may diſtinguiſh theories formed in the cloſet. A naturaliſt who has travelled will be very cautious of hazarding them; and experience will teach him how much the ſavage differs from the domeſtic animal in its appetite for procreation.

The domeſtic ſtate is a ſtate of ſervitude, in which the individual, and even the ſpecies, more or leſs degenerates. Its natural inſtinct being thus altered, the animal is purpoſely heated by a particular kind of food: it is ſeparated from the females and males of its own ſpecies, and is forced to produce monſters, which are only a deviation from nature. I call them a deviation, becauſe, as they are barren, they thwart that law which ſhe has impoſed on all living beings, of producing others of the ſame kind. In a ſavage ſtate the individual, perfectly free, invariably follows theſe laws, copulates with thoſe of its own ſpecies, and never with thoſe of another.

If in Europe we ſee pheaſants produce with a ſpecies different from their own; if in our aviaries the canary bird produces with the ſiſkin*, and the linnet with the goldfinch; it is only becauſe they are forced to do ſo by being ſeparated from their own females, and put into a cage with others of a different race; and even then it cannot be accompliſhed till theſe birds

* *Fringilla ſpinus.* This bird is called in Suſſex the barley-bird; becauſe it appears about the time when the barley becomes ripe. T.

have

have become, as it were, naturaliſed among us. In vain would the experiment be attempted, or at leaſt it would be more difficult to make it ſucceed, on the real canary bird, brought to Europe with the habits and inſtinct of its native country. My friend Temminck at Amſterdam has for many years had an immenſe aviary, in which he keeps all kinds of rare and foreign birds. The greater part of them multiply there as if in a ſtate of liberty; but none of them have hitherto produced him a mixed breed.

The ſtate of ſervitude in which a domeſtic animal lives, the food to which it is confined, and the education given it, alter and modify its nature. By living with us it appears, ſo to ſpeak, to become corrupted and to aſſume our vices. This at leaſt is found to be the caſe with the dogs, horſes, &c. which we breed. I have been informed that, at the houſe of an upholſterer in the ſtreet Croix-des-Petits-Champs at Paris, a ſhe-cat and a dog produced young ones, which lived. Had theſe animals been reared in a foreſt, ſooner than copulate together, they would have devoured each other.

The quagga is not in reality, and cannot be engendered between a wild horſe and the zebra; for there are no wild horſes indigenous in the ſouthern part of Africa. The horſes ſeen there at preſent have been carried thither from Europe; but theſe never ſtray from the colonies, and none ever advanced, before mine, to the twenty-fifth degree of latitude, where there are both quaggas and zebras.

Beſides, if that animal were a baſtard breed of the zebra, the young ones, while ſuckled by the mothers, would be ſeen following them in the herds of zebras: but this has never been obſerved; and the herds of both ſpecies have as little intercourſe as the different herds of antelopes. I have often ſeen, in the plains, herds of zebras and herds of quaggas at the ſame time; but I always ſaw them ſeparate.

To all theſe proofs I ſhall add that, before European horſes were introduced at the Cape, the quagga exiſted there, and was known to the natives. This animal is much ſmaller than the zebra; and its cry has a perfect reſemblance to the barking of a dog. With regard to that of the zebra, it is exactly like the ſound of

of a ſtone ſliding on the ice, after being thrown with great force.

Diſappointed in my hopes of getting near enough to ſhoot ſome of theſe iſabella-coloured wild aſſes, notwithſtanding the fatigue and trouble to which I ſubjected myſelf, I made amends for the loſs by attacking the birds, without number, preſented by this country, which now reſounded for the firſt time with the report of a fuſee. Plants, birds and quadrupeds, and, in ſhort, almoſt every object, even to the diſpoſition and form of the mountains, were new to me. The ground was every where covered with the moſt beautiful flowers; and I ſaw fluttering around me, on all ſides, over this rural and brilliant parterre, a multitude of ſmall birds of the ſpecies of the ſugar-eater, which, embelliſhed with the livelieſt colours, came to ſip their nectar, and ſeemed to be ſo many animated flowers themſelves. The odoriferous juices on which they fed, being transformed into their ſubſtance, gave them an ambroſial perfume; which made me regret that I ſhould have to place them one day in my collection, with birds which, having

ing fed only on carrion, caterpillars, and diſguſting inſects, retain alſo their ſmell.

I found here the different ſpecies which the younger Geoffroy has ſince brought from Senegal; and particularly barbicans, a variety of thoſe deſcribed by Buffon, under the name of the Barbary barbican. I found alſo, in great abundance, *la petite veuve dominicaine*, deſcribed by Briſſon, and remarkable for its modeſt plumage and the length of its tail. In ſhort, that I may ſuppreſs unintereſting details, and give an idea of the treaſures which this diſtrict preſents to the ornithologiſt, I ſhall only obſerve that, of the genus alone of the ſugar-eaters, or birds which feed on the juices of flowers, and which in many nomenclatures are claſſed, for what reaſon I know not, among the wood-peckers, I found ſeven diſtinct ſpecies.

With regard to large and ſmall game, they were equally abundant; and I will venture to affirm, that this diſtrict would ſupply a ſufficiency of proviſions for an army of two thouſand men.

In the midſt of this immenſe menagerie, the variety

variety of which kept me in a continual ſtate of enchantment, I was ſurpriſed not to find that prodigious number of rhinoceroſes which had been mentioned to me by the people of Haripa's horde. One day, however, Klaas, who was always concerned in every matter of importance, and the firſt to communicate agreeable intelligence, came in great haſte to my tent to inform me that he had obſerved, at ſome diſtance from my camp, two of theſe animals, ſtanding quietly, cloſe to each other, in the middle of the plain; and that I had it in my power to enjoy the pleaſure of the fineſt hunt I had ever yet experienced.

The hunt, indeed, promiſed to be amuſing; but, independently of danger, I foreſaw that it was likely to be attended with difficulties. To attack two ſuch formidable enemies, it was neceſſary to uſe great precaution, and that we ſhould approach them in ſuch a manner as that they might neither ſee nor ſmell us, which is always very difficult. I at firſt propoſed to form a ring, which ſhould ſurround them on all ſides; and to advance upon them, gradually contracting the circle, ſo as to unite the moment we were about to commence our attack; but

but the ſavages aſſured me that, with theſe animals, this plan was impracticable. I gave myſelf up, therefore, entirely to their direction; and we ſet out, armed alike, with a good fuſee, and with the neceſſary courage. All my hunters wiſhed to be of the party, and each propoſed to diſplay the greateſt proweſs. I cauſed two of my ſtrongeſt dogs to be led in a leaſh, in order that they might be let looſe on the rhinoceroſes, in caſe it ſhould be found neceſſary. We were obliged to make a long circuit to gain the lee-ſide of them, leſt they ſhould ſmell us; and we reached the river, the courſe of which we followed under cover of the large trees that grew on its banks, when Klaas ſoon made us obſerve the two animals, at about the diſtance of a quarter of a league in the plain.

As one of them was much larger than the other, I ſuppoſed them to be a male and a female. Motionleſs by the ſide of each other, they were ſtill in the ſame poſture in which Klaas had firſt ſeen them; but they ſtood with their noſes to the wind, and conſequently preſented to us their rumps. It is the cuſtom of theſe animals, when thus at reſt, to place them-

themſelves in the direction of the wind, in order that they may diſcover by their ſmell what enemies they have to dread. From time to time, however, they move their heads round to take a look behind them, and to be aſſured that they are ſafe on all ſides; but it is only a look, and they ſoon return to their former poſition.

We were already deliberating on the diſpoſitions to be made for commencing the attack, and I was giving ſome orders to my company, when Jonker, one of my Hottentots, requeſted that I would permit him to attack the two animals alone, as a *bekruyper*.

My readers will here recollect, that, when I fooliſhly attempted to croſs the Elephants-River, near its mouth, on the trunk of a tree, Jonker was one of the ſwimmers who ſaved my life; and that in return, at the deſire of his companions, I raiſed him to the rank of hunter. At that time he was entirely a novice in this exerciſe; but I have already remarked, that he afterwards became a moſt excellent ſhot, and ſurpaſſed all the reſt of my hunters, particularly in the art of *creeping*.

I have before obſerved, that hunting in

Africa

Africa has no reſemblance to that in Europe; that to get within reach of certain wild animals, we muſt approach them without being perceived; and that it is impoſſible to get near them but by creeping on the belly. Thoſe who have acquired this art are called *bekruypers;* and it was in this quality that Jonker aſked leave to attack alone the two rhinoceroſes, aſſuring me that he would acquit himſelf to my ſatisfaction.

As his deſign would not prevent the execution of our plan; and as, in caſe his particular attack ſhould not ſucceed, it would not impede our general one, I granted his requeſt. He then ſtripped himſelf naked, and, taking his fuſee, proceeded towards the animals, creeping on his belly like a ſerpent.

In the mean time, I pointed out to my hunters the different poſts they were to occupy. They repaired to them by circuitous ways, each accompanied by two men. As for me, I remained on the ſpot where I was, with two Hottentots, one of whom held my horſe, and the other my dogs; but, to avoid being ſeen, we poſted ourſelves behind a buſh.

In my hand I held a glaſs, which had often enabled

enabled me to ſee the operation of ſtage machinery, and the effect of our theatrical decorations. How changed the ſcene! At this moment it brought before me two hideous monſters, which at times turned towards me their frightful heads. Their movements, which indicated fear and obſervation, ſoon became more frequent; and I was apprehenſive they had heard the agitation of my dogs, who, having diſcovered them, made efforts to eſcape from the keeper, and ruſh upon them.

Jonker ſtill kept ſlowly advancing, but with his eyes fixed on the two animals. If he ſaw them turn their heads, he ſtopped and remained motionleſs. One would have taken him for a large ſtone; and indeed, in this reſpect, I myſelf was deceived.

He continued creeping, with various interruptions, for more than an hour. At length I ſaw him proceed towards a large buſh of euphorbia, which was only two hundred paces from the animals. Being certain, when he reached it, that he could conceal himſelf there without being ſeen, he roſe up; and, caſting his eyes every where around, to ſee whether

whether his comrades had arrived at their poſts, he made preparations for firing.

During the time he was creeping along, I had followed him with my eye; and, in proportion as he advanced, I felt my heart beat with involuntary palpitation. This palpitation, however, increaſed, when I ſaw him ſo near the animals, and juſt upon the point of firing at one of them. What would I not have given at that moment to have been in the place of Jonker, or at leaſt by his ſide, that I might have brought down alſo one of theſe ſavage monſters? I waited with the utmoſt impatience for the report of the gun, and I could not conceive what prevented him from firing; but the Hottentot who ſtood near me, and who was able by the bare ſight to diſtinguiſh him as perfectly as I could with my glaſs, informed me of his deſign. He told me, that Jonker did not fire, becauſe he was waiting till one of the rhinoceroſes ſhould turn round, that he might, if poſſible, take aim at its head; and that, on the firſt motion they made, I ſhould hear the report.

Preſently the largeſt of the two, having looked

looked behind, was immediately fired at. Being wounded, he ſent forth a horrid cry; and, followed by the female, ran furiouſly towards the place from which the noiſe had proceeded. I found my heart now agitated by the moſt violent emotion; and my fear was carried to its utmoſt extent. A cold ſweat diffuſed itſelf over my whole body; and my heart beat with ſuch force as to prevent me from breathing. I expected to ſee the two monſters tear up the buſh, tread the unfortunate Jonker under their feet, and rend him to pieces; but he had thrown himſelf down with his belly on the ground, and this ſtratagem ſucceeded. They paſſed cloſe by his ſide without perceiving him, and came ſtraight towards me.

My fear now gave place to joy, and I prepared to receive them; but my dogs, animated by the report they had heard, became ſo reſtleſs on their approach, that, being unable to check them, I ordered them to be let looſe, and encouraged them to the attack.

When the animals ſaw this, they inſtantly turned aſide, and proceeded towards another of the hunters placed in ambuſh, from whom

they received a ſecond fire, and then to another, from whom they received a third. My dogs, on the other hand, haraſſed them prodigiouſly, which ſtill increaſed their rage. They kicked at them in the moſt terrible manner; ploughed up the plain with their horns; and, digging furrows in it ſeven or eight inches in depth, threw around them a ſhower of pebbles and ſtones.

During this time we all kept approaching, in order to ſurround them more cloſely, and to unite againſt them our forces. The multitude of enemies by which they found themſelves encloſed rendered them completely furious. The male, however, ſuddenly ſtopped; and, turning round to attack the dogs, endeavoured to rip up their bellies with his horn; and while he was engaged in purſuing them, the female quitted him and made her eſcape.

I was highly pleaſed at her flight, which I conſidered as a fortunate circumſtance; for it is certain that, notwithſtanding our number and our arms, we ſhould have been much embarraſſed by two ſo formidable adverſaries. I muſt even confeſs, that, without the aſſiſtance of my dogs, we ſhould not have been able to

combat, but with great hazard and danger, the one that remained. The bloody traces, which he left wherever he went, announced that he had received more than one wound; but, reduced to deſpair, he only defended himſelf with the greater obſtinacy.

After a fruitleſs attack, which continued for ſome time, he began to retreat; and ſeemed as if deſirous of gaining ſome buſhes, apparently with a view of finding ſhelter, and to prevent his being haraſſed but in front. I gueſſed his ſtratagem; and, in order to diſappoint him, I ruſhed towards the buſhes, and made a ſign to the two hunters who were neareſt me to advance thither alſo. He was only thirty paces from us, when we took poſſeſſion of the poſt; accordingly we all at the ſame time preſented our pieces, and, diſcharging our three ſhots, he inſtantly fell, and was never after able to riſe.

I beheld his fall with the utmoſt ſatisfaction: as a hunter and a naturaliſt, it afforded me a double triumph.

Though mortally wounded, the animal ſtill continued to defend himſelf when lying on the ground, as he had done when on his legs. With his feet he threw around him heaps of

ſtones; and neither we nor our dogs durſt venture to approach him. I wiſhed to put an end to his torment, by firing one more ball, and was making preparations for the purpoſe, when my people entreated me to deſiſt. As I could not aſcribe their requeſt to ſentiments of pity, I was at a loſs to conceive what could be their motive.

I have already ſaid, that all the ſavage tribes, and even the people at the Cape and in the colonies, ſet a high value on the dried blood of the rhinoceros, to which they aſcribe great virtues in the cure of certain diſorders, and which they conſider, in particular, as a ſovereign remedy for obſtructions. The reader will recollect, that when Swanepoel, intoxicated by Pinar, fell under the wheels of my carriage, and had one of his ribs broken, he aſked me for the blood of the rhinoceros; but, as none of it could be had, he drank ſome brandy in its ſtead. Nature alone effected a cure; but he aſcribed it to the liquor, and acknowledged that this remedy, equally proper, he ſaid, for the ſick and the ſound, was preferable to the other. His companions, however, had retained their prepoſſeſſion; and they were determined

to have a ſtore of rhinoceros-blood. The animal had loſt a great deal by his wounds. It was with much regret that they ſaw the earth moiſtened with it around him; and they were apprehenſive that a new wound would increaſe that loſs.

Scarcely had the animal breathed his laſt, when, both old and new Hottentots, all approached, with eagerneſs, in order to collect the blood. With that view they cut open its belly, and took out the bladder, which they emptied. One of them then applied the mouth of it to one of the wounds, while the reſt ſhook a leg of the animal to make the blood flow more readily. In a little time, to their great joy, the bladder was filled; and I am perſuaded that with what was loſt they might have filled twenty.

I had approached the body alſo, but with a different deſign; for my intention was only to meaſure and examine it. The ſavages of the horde, accuſtomed to ſee ſuch animals very often, aſſured me that it was one of the largeſt of its ſpecies. I, however, did not believe them; and what induced me to doubt their information was, that its principal horn was

only [in French meaſure] nineteen inches three lines in length; and I had ſeen horns much longer in the poſſeſſion of ſome of the Dutch planters. The height of the animal was ſeven feet five inches, and its length, from the ſnout to the root of the tail, eleven feet ſix inches.

Reſpecting the African rhinoceros, Dr. Sparmann has publiſhed a learned diſſertation, as valuable for the reſearches he made, as for the truth and correctneſs of the facts he relates. To attempt to ſpeak of the animal after him would be expoſing myſelf to repetition, or to the ſhame of being accounted a plagiariſt. I regret, however, that a work in which the rhinoceros is ſo well deſcribed ſhould be accompanied with ſo faulty a figure.

I allude only to the engravings publiſhed in the French and Dutch tranſlations. Having never ſeen the Swediſh original, I do not know whether it be equally defective; and under that uncertainty I ſhall one day publiſh a drawing of the animal, ſuch as I took it from nature. In the tranſlation of Bruce's Travels into Abyſſinia, there is another figure of the two-horned rhinoceros; but it is faulty alſo; as the

the French engraver has improperly given it the folds of the one-horned rhinoceros, which it certainly has not, at leaſt in the ſouthern part of Africa: and that theſe animals are ſo formed in Abyſſinia, I very much doubt.

In ſpeaking of Quammedaka, a canton ſituated to the eaſt, Mr. Sparmann ſays, "that it is "the principal abode of the two-horned rhino-"ceros." The author is here miſtaken; but his error is the more pardonable, as he had not an opportunity of viſiting countries which would have afforded him better information.

The tiger, the lion, and other quadrupeds, which live upon prey, frequent diſtricts where flocks are fed, and which produce an abundance of wild animals. With the rhinoceros the caſe is different. As his food, like that of the elephant, conſiſts in vegetables, which are every where to be found, and as he is ſtill more ſavage, he removes, like the elephant, from all inhabited places.

It may be readily perceived, therefore, that with ſuch habits, inſtead of preferring for his reſidence a peopled diſtrict, interſperſed with farms, like that of Quammedaka, he ought on the contrary to avoid it. If from time to time

ſome few are ſeen there, they are, as one may ſay, loſt travellers, which, being ſoon diſcovered and purſued by the inhabitants, are either killed or obliged to ſeek their native country as faſt as poſſible.

If there were abundance of rhinoceroſes at Quammedaka in the time of Dr. Sparmann, there were none there in my time, any more than in the colony itſelf, which they deſerted in proportion as it began to be better peopled.

"Bontius," adds Mr. Sparmann, "remarked long ago, that the rhinoceros is generally "killed with powder and ball. Buffon, probably, did not pay attention to this paſſage, "when he aſſerts, on the authority of Gervaiſe, that the ſkin of the rhinoceros cannot "be pierced by any ball."

If we can give credit to certain travellers, the one-horned rhinoceros, the ſcaly ſkin of which is folded back on the neck, in the form of a mantelet, is ſo hard that it withſtands a muſket ſhot; and it is probably this ſpecies to which Buffon alludes.

For my part, I am acquainted with thoſe only of Southern Africa, and never ſaw any but the two-horned rhinoceros, which has a ſmooth

ſkin

ſkin like the elephant. No other kind is known at the Cape and in the colonies; and with regard to this ſpecies, its ſkin is not proof againſt ball; as is proved by the hunt of which I have here given the hiſtory; and I am perſuaded, that the caſe is the ſame with the one-horned rhinoceros.

The ſmall horn of the one we killed was a third ſhorter than the other. I have already remarked, that the large one was nineteen inches in length; but what ſurpriſed me was to find that this ſo formidable weapon, with which he ploughed up the earth to a great depth, and threw around him very large ſtones, was not implanted in the bone of the head; that it adhered only to the ſkin, and that when the ſkin was ſhaken, it moved alſo.

The eye of the rhinoceros, much too ſmall in proportion to ſo enormous a body, is ſunk very deep into the head; becauſe the external ſkin, raiſed round the orbit in ſeveral circular folds, forms a tube ſome inches in length, at the bottom of which it is placed.

This tube, by diminiſhing the field of ſight and concentrating the viſual rays, may perhaps ſerve to ſtrengthen the organ; but it prevents

the animal from ſeeing any other objects than thoſe which are in the direction of its eye. The ſavages, therefore, when not in that direction, think themſelves in ſafety, even when very near the animal, becauſe he cannot then obſerve them.

A ſingular peculiarity of the two-horned rhinoceros is, that he ploughs up the ground with his horn as he runs along, and at the ſame time throws his urine to a great diſtance behind him, making a kind of kicking with his feet. Another remarkable cuſtom of this animal is that of beating to pieces with his feet his excrements, which he never leaves whole like the elephant.

Though the fleſh of the rhinoceros does not approach that of the hippopotamus, it is far ſuperior to that of the elephant.

My ſavages promiſed themſelves a delicious feaſt; and the idea alone of this treat was more than an equivalent for all the dangers to which they had been expoſed. What enjoyment to them was an animal which weighed at leaſt two or three thouſand pounds! As night was approaching, and as they wiſhed to have their feaſt that evening, they all immediately

diately began to cut from it ſuch pieces as they liked. In leſs than an hour, each had his load; nor did the carcaſe appear to be in the leaſt diminiſhed; but they propoſed to return to it the next and following days with all their companions, in order to cut it up completely.

I had reſolved to return along with them, in hopes that this immenſe body might attract ſome birds of prey, which I ſhould be able to procure without much difficulty; but, when I was preparing to depart, my attention was attracted by melodious ſtrains, ſuch as I had never heard, which proceeded from all parts of the banks of the river. I advanced, therefore, under the trees, and actually diſcovered a number of birds, with which I had till that moment been unacquainted. By thus paſſing ſuddenly from the hunting of quadrupeds to the purſuit of birds, I gave ſome reſt to my imagination fatigued with carnage; and I ſaw diminiſhed, in the proportion of the objects, that natural horror and diſguſt which it often excited. Frequently I turned my eyes upon the verdure and the flowers; and if any portion of diſguſt, inſeparable from a wandering and ſolitary exiſtence, happened to ſurpriſe me

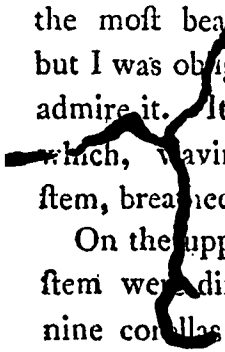
me in the midſt of my fatigues, the meaneſt plant, by catching my ſight and ſtopping my career, recalled me to that ſatisfactory ſentiment of exiſtence, which ſo deſerted a condition would otherwiſe have deſtroyed. I ſtrayed along the banks of the river, and penetrated into the woods, where I killed ſeveral new ſpecies of birds, which I had never before found. Embarraſſed often in my choice, when I obſerved many on the ſame tree, I was at a loſs which I ſhould fire at; but, as may be readily conceived, I gave a preference always to the moſt remarkable or the moſt beautiful.

But let us turn our attention to an object not leſs touching, to colours perhaps more brilliant and delightful.

While occupied with birds, their melodious warblings, their ſplendid and variegated plumage, I advanced through a grove of mimoſas, when my organs of ſmell were ſuddenly ſtruck with the moſt exquiſite perfume. I ſought, therefore, for the plant or ſhrub which afforded me ſo delicious a pleaſure. The ſurrounding air ſerved me as a guide; and the nearer I approached to the flower, the more was I intoxicated with the ſmell. I had reached the

banks

banks of the river, when my admiration was excited by the ſight of a magnificent plant, the moſt beautiful I had ever contemplated; but I was obliged to raiſe my head in order to admire it. It was a lily ſeven feet in height, which, waving majeſtically on its flexible ſtem, breathed forth its delicious odour.



On the upper part of its ſtraight tapering ſtem were diſplayed, in elegant order, thirty-nine corollas or flowers, ſix of which were half blown, eighteen in full bloom, and fifteen ready to open. Thoſe which had attained to their complete ſize formed a calyx, a third larger than that of the white lilies of Europe. Their petals, of a beautiful flaxen grey on the outſide, and white as ſnow within, were edged with a crimſon border, and were ſet off by a piſtil and ſtamina, which in colour equalled the brighteſt carmine. The ſtem, ſeven feet in height, was, where thickeſt, ſix inches in circumference. Reddened on the ſide towards the ſun, which had given it a vinous tint, it was green every where elſe, and bore leaves three feet in length, and in breadth three feet and a half. In a word, this plant, produced in a ſolitude, and pure as the ſun which had em-

belliſhed

belliſhed it, had been reſpected by all the animals of the diſtrict, and ſeemed defended even by its beauty.

This wonderful object, which I had diſcovered, ſtruck me ſo powerfully, as to occupy my whole attention. All my plans of hunting were now forgotten; I gave place to the birds of which I was in purſuit; and thought of nothing but the means of preſerving my beautiful lily.

This, however, was a matter of ſome difficulty. I had neither inſtruments proper for digging up the earth without damaging it, nor a baſket, or other veſſel of the like kind, to hold it. To go to my waggons in queſt of what I wanted, would have been to abandon it; and I ſhould have perhaps expoſed it to a danger it never before experienced. Under this embarraſſment, and unwilling to loſe ſight of it, I reſolved to fire ſeveral ſhots, in order to call to my aſſiſtance ſome of my people.

On this ſignal of alarm, ſeveral of them haſtened towards me. They imagined me expoſed to ſome danger, and were ſurpriſed to ſee me in ecſtacy before a flower. I ſent to my camp for ſome iron tools, and a baſket

like

like thoſe pretty ones given to me by Narina. When they arrived, we dug up with great caution the bulb of the lily, which was thirteen inches in height, and twenty-ſeven in circumference. In ſhape and colour it reſembled that of the tulip; but, inſtead of being compoſed of ſeparate coats, like the bulb of the lily, it was full, pulpy, and very heavy. I at leaſt conjectured ſo by analogy from what I ſaw of the exterior part, which, notwithſtanding all our care, had been cut by the iron implements uſed to dig up the earth around it.

The flower, when arranged, and in a manner planted in its baſket, was placed at the entrance of my tent by way of ornament. The corollas all opened and expanded in ſucceſſion; and, for a long time, I enjoyed the pleaſure of beholding it, and of ſmelling its delicious odour, till its perfume being exhauſted, and having no longer ſtrength to attract the moiſture which nouriſhed it, I ſaw it droop, wither, and die.

I had the good fortune to preſerve the bulb of this lily during my whole journey; and I carried it to the Cape, with a deſign of ſending it to the botanical garden; but the reader may have

have ſeen, in the account of my firſt journey, the fate of thoſe ſeeds which I had collected, and this bulb was unluckily among them.

It was the 4th of January when we encamped on the banks of Fiſh-river. During my reſidence in this country, I had often changed my encampment, in order that, by my different ſtations, I might find new objects; and it had indeed furniſhed me, in birds alone, with more than eighty diſtinct ſpecies, ten of which were new.

I was ſorry, therefore, to quit a diſtrict ſo agreeable, and which, independently of what it added to my collections, enſured me abundance of proviſions for my people. On the 24th, however, I announced my intention to depart; but my Hottentots having come in a body to requeſt leave to complete their preparations of the fleſh of the rhinoceros, I agreed to remain three days longer. During this delay they exerted themſelves with much ardour. Men and women, all laboured on the animal without remiſſion; and, when I ſet out, they regretted much that they were obliged to leave behind a great deal more than they carried with them.

To

To reach a horde of Kabobiquas, whom I propoſed to viſit, we had only to march eight leagues; but as the road lay acroſs mountains ſo parched, and paſſes and defiles ſo difficult, that one day would not be ſufficient, my Koraqua guides adviſed me to ſet out in the night, if I wiſhed not to be expoſed to the neceſſity of ſleeping by the way, and to the hazard of being deſtitute of water. We began our march therefore, at two in the morning, proceeding north-eaſt; and towards noon we halted to dine under the ſhelter of ſome rocks, which protected us from the ſcorching heat of the ſun.

As we had ſtill three leagues to march, I was deſirous, according to my cuſtom, that Klaas and ſome more of my Hottentots ſhould go on before, accompanied by the two guides, and repair to the horde to inform them of my approach. My Koraquas, however, aſſured me that this precaution was perfectly uſeleſs; which made me ſuſpect that ſome of their tribe had taken the ſtart of me, and gone thither without my knowledge.

The Kabobiquas, indeed, were waiting for me with childiſh impatience. Every thing that

that had been told them reſpecting me bore the character of the moſt enthuſiaſtic exaggeration; and their imaginations had ſtill heightened the extravagance of theſe accounts.—The white man, his fuſees, his equipage, objects none of which they had ever before ſeen, awakened their curioſity; and the delay of my arrival was a kind of torment to them.

As ſoon as they perceived my company, the whole horde quitted the kraal, and ran with eagerneſs to meet me. I experienced here, along with an additional degree of trouble and importunity, all that tumultuous activity, which I had before, more than once, experienced in the new hordes of ſavages which I viſited. I was ſurrounded by men and women indiſcriminately, who thronged about me to examine my perſon. Not being able to believe their eyes in regard to what they ſaw, they endeavoured to obtain more ſatisfaction by touching me. They felt my hair, hands, and almoſt every part of my body. My beard, above all, aſtoniſhed them to an inconceivable degree. More than thirty perſons came in ſucceſſion, and half unbuttoned my clothes.

They

They all imagined me to be a hairy animal; and ſuppoſed, without doubt, that my body was covered with hair as long as that on my chin; but, finding this not to be the caſe, they were aſtoniſhed, and confeſſed, with the openneſs of ſavages, that they had never ſeen the like in any man of their country. The little children, terrified at my appearance, hid themſelves behind their mothers. When I attempted to lay hold of any of them, in order to careſs them, they ſent forth loud cries, as a child would do in Europe who ſhould ſee a negro for the firſt time.

Such was my ſituation among this multitude, who preſſed upon me in crowds. Though the only perſon of my colour among them, I reſigned myſelf to them without fear. The aſtoniſhment which many of them ſhowed at the ſight of a white man, and the tumult it occaſioned, did not ſurpriſe me.

Through this haraſſing curioſity I more and more perceived that invariable principle of nature, which gives to the ſavage a ſimple, mild, and unſuſpicious character: and indeed, before I had been twenty-four hours in the horde, I was become the friend of every one, and the moſt

perfect confidence was eſtabliſhed between us. The children even, who, when they firſt ſaw me, had been ſo much terrified, grew quite familiar. I had gained their affection by giving them ſmall bits of ſugar-candy; and the little epicures, attracted by this dainty, were continually careſſing me, in order to make me open the box in which it was contained.

I muſt again repeat, for the ſake of thoſe travellers who, like me, may undertake to traverſe unknown countries, that if they do not deſcend to the level of the ſimple people they may viſit; if they do not purſue the meaſures neceſſary to pleaſe them; if they do not endeavour to become acquainted with their genius, to attach them by intereſt, and to ſecure their friendſhip, they will undoubtedly meet with nothing but misfortune and diſaſter.

I flatter myſelf that I left among all thoſe whom I viſited a favourable impreſſion of the whites. By this I have rendered a ſervice to the curious, who may be diſpoſed to purſue my courſe; and I ſhall think myſelf amply rewarded if it prove uſeful to them; and particularly if they do not abuſe it.

The chief of the horde ſhewed me every

mark

mark of attachment. He was a man advanced in life, and of a majeſtic figure. He wore a long mantle, which hung from his ſhoulders to the ground, and which, formed of four jackal ſkins joined together, was bordered at the ſides with that of a hyæna.

The hyæna of this country is the ſame as that of which a figure and deſcription are given in Buffon; and I ſpeak of it here, becauſe travellers, when they mention that of the Cape, confound them together, though they are very different, and becauſe I have ſeldom had an opportunity of ſeeing it in the courſe of my travels.

The names of three different ſpecies of the hyæna are known at the Cape, though they are all comprehended under the common appellation of wolf.

The firſt kind, which is ſeen oftenеſt, and moſt dreaded by the planters on account of their flocks, is that of which I have given a figure under the name of the ſpotted wolf; a denomination it generally bears in all the colonies.

The ſecond is called *ſtrand-wolf* (ſhore-wolf), from its never quitting the ſea coaſt or

the borders of rivers. I had no opportunity of ſeeing it; but the places which it frequents make me conjecture that it is ichthyophagous, and feeds upon fiſh. I was aſſured that it has no ſpots, and that it is entirely of a tawny colour.

With regard to the third, named *geſtreepte-wolf* (the ſtriped wolf), it is probably the hyæna deſcribed by Buffon. I muſt however remark, that, not having ſeen it in the neighbourhood of the Cape, I doubt much whether it be the ſame as the hyæna to which the planters give that name: perhaps they know it only by tradition. For myſelf, I can ſay that I never ſaw but two kinds in all that part of Africa which I traverſed, viz. the ſpotted wolf, and the hyæna of the naturaliſts. The latter I found no where except beyond the country of the Greater Nimiquas, towards the tropic. When I returned to the Cape and gave it out as the ſtriped wolf, every body believed me, and no one doubted the truth of what I advanced. It may nevertheleſs be different in ſome particular characteriſtic, and form a fourth ſpecies diſtinct from the reſt. At ſome future time, perhaps, they will be all better known.

Whilſt

Whilſt I was converſing with the chief by means of my interpreters, I obſerved that his left-hand wanted two joints of the little finger. I thought proper to aſk him the reaſon, and was informed, that, having in his infancy had a ſevere illneſs, amputation had been employed to cure him.

Though he anſwered my queſtion, I perceived that it had not been agreeable to him. During the reſt of our converſation, he ſeemed to be uneaſy, that from time to time I caſt my eyes towards his hand; and, till the moment of my departure, he always endeavoured to conceal it when we were together.

This cuſtom of a ſavage people, who, to relieve a man in pain, add new ſufferings to his evils, affords a vaſt field for reflection; and I acknowledge that this inſtance contradicts my experience, for I never ſaw in any other part of Africa a man either mutilated or deformed.

Mr. Paterſon tells us, that he obſerved inſtances of the ſame practice among a horde at the mouth of Orange-river; which is not improbable. However abſurd a cuſtom may be, ſavage tribes, when they are neighbours, may bor-

row it from each other; but that it ſhould be common among the iſlanders of the South Seas, who, ſince their country was firſt inhabited, had never ſeen ſtrangers before Cook and Bougainville, is truly aſtoniſhing.

I was very deſirous of interrogating minutely the people of the horde on this ſubject. I wiſhed alſo to propoſe ſome queſtions to them reſpecting other cuſtoms which appeared to me ſingular; but difficulties increaſed the more I advanced into the country. The Kabobiquas ſpoke a particular language; and this dialect, though accompanied with the clapping noiſe of the Hottentots, was underſtood only by the Koraquas, who, on account of their vicinity, kept up ſome intercourſe with them.

The caſe was the ſame with the language of the Koraquas, in regard to their neighbours the Nimiquas. When the chief of the horde, therefore, wiſhed to ſpeak to me, he addreſſed what he had to ſay to my Koraquas, who tranſlated it for the Nimiquas into their language; and the latter, tranſlating it in their turn, tranſmitted it to the Hottentots of Klaas Baſter's horde, who explained it to me in

theirs. The ſame method was employed with my anſwers. Nothing reached my ear till it had paſſed through four different mouths. The reſult, however, made me eaſily perceive, that the idea was conveyed to me with as much alteration as are the thoughts of the ancient poets to thoſe unacquainted with the learned languages, notwithſtanding the ſublime genius of our tranſlators.

The Hottentots whom I had procured at the Cape and in the colonies underſtood none of theſe dialects; and they were, conſequently, of no ſervice in our conferences: a circumſtance which ſeemed to vex them. But what chagrined me more, and rendered my converſation truly fatiguing, was, that my Nimiquas underſtood the Koraqua language very imperfectly; ſo imperfectly indeed, that they often diſputed reſpecting the meaning of what was ſaid to them.

It therefore ſometimes happened, that, when I aſked any thing, the anſwer had no relation to the queſtion. No remedy could be found for this inconvenience; and it was likely to increaſe, the farther I advanced into

the country. If from the diſtrict of the leſſer Nimiquas to the Kabobiqua horde I had found four diſtinct languages, which required four different interpreters, what would be my ſituation in this reſpect when advanced ſeveral hundred leagues farther from the colonies! What difficulties muſt ariſe, if each tribe I fell in with had its own dialect! All theſe embarraſſments, however, did not diſcourage me ſo much as my people: for I could always have recourſe to the mother of all languages, the language of ſigns.

Of all the hordes I had hitherto ſeen, none ſeemed to diſplay ſo much refinement in their ornaments and dreſs as that of the Kobabiquas. I did not find among them thoſe beads and other toys common at the Cape; for the traffic carried on in theſe articles had not been extended to them. They wore ſuch trinkets of copper and oblong pieces of glaſs as I have before mentioned, which had been brought to them by worthleſs and thieviſh blacks, with whoſe language they were unacquainted, and with whom they often had to combat; becauſe, when they were returning after having ſold their merchandize, they endeavoured

deavoured to ſeize it again, and ſometimes even cattle along with it.

The articles of trade in that way which I had were unknown; and, with this merit of novelty, they could not fail to pleaſe. Scarcely had I ſhewn ſome of them, when they inſtantly excited diſputes; and every one wiſhed to get a ſhare of them. In this reſpect, the women were the moſt importunate. My readers may judge of the general impatience, when I inform them, that, in one day, I procured twenty oxen for almoſt nothing. But the moſt advantageous bargain I concluded was for a *bakkaly os* (war ox) which belonged to the chief.

This animal, as remarkable for his elegant form as his gigantic ſize, was the moſt beautiful of his ſpecies I had ever ſeen. His head was, majeſtically armed with two immenſe horns, which retiring from each other, with the utmoſt ſymmetry, to form two perfect ſemicircles, ſuddenly bent their ſummits forwards, leaving a ſpace of four feet eight inches between them. They had been made to grow in that figure by the chief himſelf; and on this account he placed ſo high a value

on

on the animal, that at firſt he would not part with him. But I diſplayed before his eyes ſuch a variety of objects, that he could not reſiſt the temptation; and he at length conſented to reſign him for a tinder-box, ſome tobacco, ſeveral ſtrings of glaſs beads, two tin bracelets, and a few nails.

Next day, however, he ſeemed to regret his bargain; or rather, having ſeen in my poſſeſſion ſome new object, which pleaſed him more than thoſe which he had received in exchange the evening before, his deſire was fixed on theſe; and he wiſhed to give back the others. This natural paſſion for poſſeſſing every thing was the cauſe of an event which deſerves to be particularly related, as it had nearly proved fatal to me.

Though I wore my beard long, I was accuſtomed, from time to time, to ſhave my muſtaches. This operation afforded me an agreeable refreſhment; and I very frequently performed it, eſpecially when our approach towards the tropic rendered the heat leſs ſupportable.

I was employed in ſoaping my lips, when the chief entered my tent, accompanied by

two

two of his friends or relations. Free from all the ceremonial of politeneſs towards people who were not acquainted even with the firſt principles of it, I continued what I had begun. The ſavages, who did not comprehend what I was about, appeared very much ſurpriſed. They waited in ſilence for the reſult, and with their eyes followed all my movements. The water which frothed in the baſon, and which I bruſhed over my lips, ſeemed to them to be the effect of magic; but, when they ſaw me apply the razor to my muſtaches, and the hair diſappear ſo readily from the place I had touched, their aſtoniſhment at this prodigy exceeded the power of words to expreſs.

To render it ſtill more ſenſible to them, and to ſhew the effects of it more cloſely, I laid hold of the chief's kroſs at one of the ends, and in an inſtant made it as ſmooth as my hand.

This ſavage was a man of good ſenſe, and poſſeſſed more underſtanding than the generality of his equals. On the firſt view, he perceived of what ineſtimable value a razor would be to him, to ſhave the hair from a

ſummer

ſummer mantle, and how much it would ſhorten his labour. At firſt he teſtified, by ſeveral expreſſive ſigns, his admiration of ſo wonderful an inſtrument; and then, without waſting time by words which I could not have underſtood, he endeavoured to ſhew, by other geſtures equally ſignificant, how deſirous he was to poſſeſs it.

This was the firſt time we had ſpoken without interpreters: but his movements were ſo energetic, that I had no need of a verbal explanation to comprehend them. He gave me to underſtand, that he was now diſpleaſed with the bracelets, girdles, and tobacco, which I had given him in exchange for his war ox the evening before; and that he would return all theſe for the razor, if I would agree to give it him.

The new bargain which he propoſed was by no means in his favour. I was well aware that a razor in his hands, employed to cut without ſoap the ſtrong hair of a dry ſkin, would in a little time be rendered uſeleſs. I was very deſirous of making him ſenſible of what, in this reſpect, his inexperience prevented him from knowing: but how was I

to

to explain myſelf? In the heat of his impatience, he had already ordered one of his attendants to bring from his hut the articles to be returned. For my part, I was reſolved to give him the razor, and to requeſt him to keep the whole: but, in the midſt of this ſcene, a ſhot was ſuddenly fired near us; and at the ſame time we heard the moſt frightful cries.

Ruſhing inſtantly from my tent, to enquire what was the cauſe of this noiſe, I ſaw a Kabobiqua flying as faſt as he could from one of my hunters, while, at the diſtance of a hundred paces farther, three men were making the moſt lamentable clamour, and near them was a young girl lying on the ground. I made a ſignal to my hunter to approach me; but the report of the ſhot, and the howling of the three men, had already ſpread alarm throughout the horde. Some cried out treachery; others ran to their arms; and I now imagined, that I was about to be maſſacred, with my whole company, and that I ſhould be obliged to arm them in my defence. My ſituation was the more critical, as neither I, nor any perſon in the kraal, knew what was

the

the cauſe of this confuſion; and if I had known, how could I have explained it?

Under this embarraſſment, I took the chief by the hand, and advanced with him towards the horde. Fear was painted in his countenance; tears began to drop from his eyes; and he ſpoke to me with great vivacity. He imagined, no doubt, that he was betrayed. He complained to me, and accuſed my people of perfidy; yet he readily followed me.

As I was without arms, and preſented myſelf with the chief, I was received with confidence, and my appearance ſeemed in ſome meaſure to calm their perturbation. My people, who had ſeen me direct my courſe towards the kraal, haſtened thither after me, to protect me; and their number overawed the multitude. At length, the whole myſtery was cleared up, and we learned what had occaſioned the tumult.

A Kabobiqua having met one of my hunters, who was returning with his fuſee, wiſhed to examine it, and begged him to ſhew it to him. In handling it, however, he accidentally touched the trigger; it inſtantly went off; and

the

the ſavage, frightened by the unexpected exploſion, threw down the fuſee, and ran away as faſt as he could.

At that time, three men of the horde and a young girl happened unluckily to be ſtanding, at the diſtance of a hundred paces, in the direction of the piece. The latter received a ſingle grain of ſhot in the cheek; and the others, a few grains in the legs and thighs. The author of the misfortune confirmed this explanation; tranquillity was ſoon reſtored; the ſavages depoſited their arms; and I was ſurrounded only by friends as before.

Nothing remained but to enquire into the ſtate of the wounded, and to give them every aſſiſtance in my power. Without loſs of time, therefore, I repaired, ſtill accompanied by the chief, to the place where they were. By the way we met the young girl, who was returning from the kraal, bathed in tears. The cauſe of her uneaſineſs was a grain of lead, which had, however, penetrated ſo little, that I forced it out by only preſſing the part with my fingers. With regard to the three men, they lay rolling on the ground, howling in a moſt frightful manner,

manner, and exhibiting every ſymptom of deſpair.

I was aſtoniſhed at their conſternation, and could not conceive how men inured to ſufferings ſhould be ſo much affected by a few ſmall punctures, the pain of which could have ſcarcely drawn tears from an infant. They at length told me the cauſe of their wailings. Theſe ſavages, accuſtomed to poiſon their arrows, imagined that I had in like manner poiſoned the lead with which they were wounded. They had, therefore, given themſelves up as loſt, and expected in a few moments to expire.

It was with great difficulty I could cauſe to be explained to them that they had nothing to fear. To convince them, in a manner ſtill more ſatisfactory, I pulled down one of my ſtockings, and ſhowed them, in the fleſh of my leg, a dozen ſhots of lead, for which I was indebted to M. Papillon de la Ferté, who, when hunting in the plains of Gennevilliers, had fired at me inſtead of a rabbit.

Klaas approached the wounded ſavages alſo; and, without waſting time in words which they would not have underſtood, took from his

his ſhot-bag a few grains of lead, and, having ſhown them to the three men, immediately ſwallowed them. This concluſive proof, which I had never thought of, produced a moſt wonderful effect. Their cries inſtantly ceaſed; ſerenity again appeared in their faces; and their wounds were no more mentioned.

I was, however, apprehenſive that the horde might ſtill harbour in their minds ſome ſeeds of ſuſpicion and animoſity: but, when they ſaw the wounded men walk as uſual, and ſeemingly well, they laughed at the whole adventure; and it produced no other effect than that of inſpiring them with a dread of fire-arms, which none of them afterwards would venture to touch.

In the evening, when my fires were kindled, every body came to form a circle around them, and to dance according to cuſtom. The whole converſation, if that term can be given to the tumultuous clamour of a multitude who ſpoke ſix different languages, was engroſſed by the accident of the morning.

It amuſed me much, though I underſtood nothing of it. I heard only the word *kaaboup* pronounced by every mouth. This was the

name given by my Hottentots to a fuſee; and it was adopted by all the ſavages who compoſed the aſſembly. Of the Kabobiquas, ſome imitated with their voice the ſound of the exploſion, others repreſented the geſtures of a perſon who takes aim to fire, and every one acted a part in the pantomime. This feſtive ſcene continued the whole night; and thus ended a day which had threatened to be tragical and bloody.

The Kabobiquas have neither the flat noſe nor plump cheeks of the Hottentots. Their ſkin alſo has not that baſtard colour, which, being neither black nor white, renders them odious to both races; nor do they beſmear their bodies with thoſe diſguſting fat ſubſtances, on account of which one cannot approach them without being bedaubed with their filth, or acquiring an offenſive ſmell. In ſtature they are as tall as the Caffres, and their colour is equally black.

I drew a portrait of one of theſe ſavages in all his glory; that is to ſay, tattooed, covered with his trinkets and ornaments, and armed from head to foot, as on the day of battle.

He yielded to my deſire with much complaiſance;

plaiſance; but I confeſs that, when I ſaw him enter my tent with his quiver at his back, his buckler on his arm, and his body nobly ornamented with a long mantle which ſwept the ground, and when he ſternly reſted on his lance, with his head elevated, and a determined look, I was ſtruck with his martial air and his dignified appearance.

He ſeveral times interrupted my work to admire it; while I, tranſported in imagination to the remoteſt periods, and to countries ſituated under the ſame latitude on the other ſide of the equator, ſeemed to behold a Jugurtha or a Syphax in arms, marching to combat in the deſerts of Numidia, in defence of his kingdom againſt the Romans. In writing my notes, therefore, every time I had occaſion to ſpeak of this warrior, I always mentioned him under the name of my Jugurtha.

The hair of this tribe, which is exceedingly ſhort and much curled, is ornamented with ſmall copper buttons, arranged with great art and ſymmetry. Inſtead of that apron made of a jackal's ſkin, employed by the Hottentot to cover what modeſty bids him conceal, the Kabobiquas uſe a round piece of leather, the

edge of which is ornamented with a ſmall indented circle of copper, and which is divided into different compartments, by rows of glaſs beads of various colours, all proceeding from the centre, and diverging towards the circumference, like the rays in our images of the ſun.

This kind of veil is made faſt to the groin by means of a girdle; but, as it is only four inches in diameter, as it is deranged by the ſmalleſt movement, and as they give themſelves little uneaſineſs reſpecting ſuch accidents, it is very ill ſuited to the purpoſe for which it is applied. During the great heats, this ſmall and almoſt uſeleſs apron is the only covering on their bodies. Its being ſo readily diſplaced enabled me to aſcertain that they do not practice circumciſion; but it ſeemed to ſhow alſo that, in regard to modeſty, their ideas are very different from ours.

Though they go thus almoſt entirely naked, their manners, inſtead of being licentious, are remarkably chaſte. No females can be more prudent or more reſerved than their women; and when I compared them with thoſe of the Greater Nimiquas, who ſeemed ſo forward and

and ſo condeſcending, I could ſcarcely believe that ſo great a difference could exiſt at ſo ſmall a diſtance.

My people, accuſtomed to the familiarity of the latter, were diſpleaſed with this ſeverity; and the ſacrifice they were obliged to make on that account ſeemed the more painful, as the Kabobiqua women were much prettier even than the Nimiquas.

Young girls, who in general among ſavages have not the ſame decency of conduct as their mothers, becauſe, not being under the ſame obligations, they enjoy more liberty, were here equally modeſt and reſerved. They ſhowed, indeed, that ſportiveneſs peculiar to their age, and which added to their charms; but it was the ſportiveneſs of innocence. When the dance was finiſhed, and their parents retired to the kraal, they all ſet out along with them, not one even remaining behind in my camp.

Whether from refinement of coquetry, or the effect of prudence, the Kabobiqua women do not tattoo their faces like their huſbands and fathers. They do not even follow their example, in ornamenting their hair with cop-

per buttons; and they always go bare-legged, though moſt of them wear ſandals.

Their dreſs conſiſts of an apron that reaches only half down the thigh; a kroſs which, paſſing under the arm-pits, is tied on the breaſt; and a long mantle like that of the men.

The mantle is made of ſkins not deprived of the hair; and the kroſs, of tanned leather prepared like that uſed for gloves in Europe.

With regard to glaſs beads, they wear them as bracelets. They form them alſo into necklaces, which deſcend in different rows to the pit of the ſtomach; and they ſuſpend from their girdles ſeveral ſtrings of them, which fall down their thighs below the apron.

Theſe ornaments being very durable, the habit of ſeeing them renders the women almoſt indifferent to the pleaſure of poſſeſſing them. Thoſe they procured from me afforded at firſt great ſatisfaction, on account of their novelty. But when I ſhewed them ſciſſars and needles, they gave the preference to theſe articles; and this choice does honour to the good ſenſe of the Kabobiqua ladies. Like their chief, they ſet a higher value on utility than ornament.

To give them needles, however, was not ſufficient; it was neceſſary to teach them alſo to uſe them. I rendered them that ſervice likewiſe; and they ſoon became ſo expert as to join together tolerably well two pieces of ſkin. For this operation, they employed a ſmall thread of gut made in the horde; and the proceſs I taught them appeared more expeditious, ſtronger, and neater, than that uſed in ſuch caſes by the ſavages, which conſiſts in boring the ſkin with a ſpike or ſharp-pointed bone, and putting the thread through the holes.

Since I returned from my travels, I have never ſeen a woman ſew without thinking of my Kabobiquas; but, on maturer reflection, I am ſorry that I made them acquainted with an art which, as they will not have it long in their power to practiſe it, muſt be a ſource to them only of regret.

When, during my firſt journey, I taught the Caffres to form a pair of forge-bellows, that which I made for them would at leaſt ſerve as a model, and they were in poſſeſſion of every thing neceſſary to enable them to conſtruct others. But the caſe was not the ſame with

my Kabobiquas. Their needles would ſoon be broken and unſerviceable, like the razor of the chief; and their chagrin would be increaſed by the impoſſibility of renewing them. If the knowledge of a new art affords by its advantages new enjoyments, it occaſions alſo new wants; and to teach it to a people, without ſecuring to them the means of exerciſing it, is making them a very bad preſent.

I ſhould in like manner have much to reproach myſelf with, had I been the firſt perſon who made the Kabobiquas acquainted with tobacco and ſpirits. But, before my arrival among them, they uſed the former, which they received, in exchange for cattle, from the Nimiqua tribes their neighbours, to whom it was conveyed from the Cape, by paſſing through various hands in commerce. As this traffic, however, did not take place but under certain circumſtances, tobacco was on that account exceedingly ſcarce, and a luxury which they could ſeldom enjoy. However, being often deprived of it, they can eaſily bear the want; and ſo indifferent are they upon the ſubject, that, if it were not brought to them, they would not go a ſtep to procure it.

This

This indifference for an article, which I had ſeen eagerly ſought for by all ſavage nations, and which was conſidered by them as an exquiſite enjoyment, ſeemed to ſhew, as well as many other circumſtances already mentioned, that there were traits in the character of theſe people which diſtinguiſhed them from others. The caſe was the ſame as to ſtrong liquors, on which they ſet no great value; and though there were among them ſome few individuals diſpoſed to reliſh them, the greater number abſolutely refuſed them.

If the contents of my flaſks gave them little ſatisfaction, they were, however, much captivated with the flaſks themſelves. Theſe tranſparent bottles excited their admiration in the higheſt degree. They called them *ſolid water*; for, notwithſtanding the heat of the climate, theſe ſavages had ſeen ice on the ſummits of the mountains by which they are ſurrounded; and they entertained no doubt that the glaſs of my flaſks was water, which I had rendered ſolid by magic, and which I prevented their fires from melting. As it was impoſſible for me to explain this matter, I did not attempt to undeceive them: and beſides, with what

what advantage would it have been attended? I ſuffered them, therefore, to continue in their error, and contented myſelf with conferring on them an obligation, by giving them all the empty bottles for which I had no uſe.

On their part, they vied with each other in ſhewing their generoſity towards me; and I muſt indeed allow, that I never ſaw a nation ſo diſintereſted. Every night they brought to my camp a conſiderable quantity of milk; and they never came to ſpend the evening with my people, without bringing ſome ſheep to regale them. I have ſeen many of them give away gratuitouſly, and without receiving any thing in return, part of their herds and their flocks; and, when I departed, there were many perſons in my caravan who poſſeſſed both ſheep and oxen, which they had received as a pure gift.

What difference between theſe people, ſo affectionate, ſo generous, and the Greater Nimiquas, who always approached me with a piteous air, holding out their hands like mendicants, to aſk of me every thing they ſaw!

With this benevolent diſpoſition, the Kabobiquas have alſo a martial character. Their weapons

weapons are poiſoned arrows, and a lance with a long iron point, but different from the aſſagay of the Hottentots. In battle their defenſive armour conſiſts of two bucklers; the one of a ſize ſufficient to cover the whole body of the combatant; the other much ſmaller. They are both made of ſkins exceedingly thick, and proof againſt arrows.

The latter, which is of a round figure, and from twelve to fifteen inches in breadth, is borne on the lower part of the arm during the time of action; but, when it becomes uſeleſs, they remove it above the elbow towards the ſhoulder. It is ornamented with a copper ring placed round its circumference, and with ſeveral rows of beads diſplayed over its ſurface, forming compartments according to the whim of the owner, and diſtinguiſhed by ſuch colours as are moſt agreeable to his taſte.

By means of this variety, the buckler of each is different, and has no reſemblance to that of another; and as the individuals of a tribe know one another by their mode of tattooing, they can diſtinguiſh each other alſo by the manner in which they blazon their ſhields.

The courage which the Kabobiquas diſplay in

in combat is particularly exerciſed in their hunting excurſions, and above all againſt carnivorous animals. Intrepid, however, as it may be to attack the elephant and the rhinoceros, theſe ſpecies of animals are not objects of their vengeance; becauſe, living upon graſs and herbs, they have nothing to apprehend from them, either for themſelves or their cattle. But the tiger, lion, hyæna, and panther, being enemies of a different kind, they declare againſt them implacable war, and purſue them without remiſſion.

Of the ſpoils of theſe deſtructive animals they form their bucklers, girdles, ſandals, kroſſes, mantles, &c. They conſider it as a mark of honour to wear them; and they ſet a much higher value upon them than upon the ſkin of the rhinoceros or of the elephant. If they ſometimes hunt the latter, it is only as objects of food; and they employ to catch them thoſe concealed pits, which are the uſual ſnares of the Hottentots: but this method, which requires both patience and labour, is very little ſuited to a people ſo brave and enterpriſing as the Kabobiquas.

Keen and reſolute hunters, they add to native valour

valour the utmoſt activity. Nimble as deer; nothing can ſtop their courſe; neither exceſſive fatigue, nor the longeſt and moſt difficult journeys. I have often hunted in their company; and I always found them indefatigable and ready for every undertaking. But, notwithſtanding all their ſkill and activity, they were never able to bring me within reach of a white zebra, nor of a particular kind of antelope, which I believe to have been a gnou, though it was larger than the gnous are in general.

Theſe are the two ſpecies of animals that are moſt common in this part of the country. A great many rhinoceroſes, and antelopes without number, are alſo to be ſeen; but, whether it be owing to the intenſe heat of the climate, to the place being unſuitable to their nature, or rather to the want of food proper for them, no giraffes are any longer to be found in it.

As the Kabobiquas poſſeſs ſo bold and reſolute a character, one might be induced to believe that they are ferocious and intractable. Among all the African nations, however, which I have viſited, I never knew one that ſo much practiſed obedience and ſubordination.

The

The chief here is not, as in other tribes, a principal among his equals; he is a ſovereign in the midſt of his ſubjects, a maſter ſurrounded by his ſlaves. A word, a geſture, or a look, is ſufficient to procure him obedience. Whatever be his orders, they are never contradicted; and the caſe is the ſame in every particular family. What the chief is to the horde, the father is to his children. His commands are abſolute; and he exerciſes regal power at home, while he obeys elſewhere.

Though the tribe was very numerous, the wiſdom with which it was ruled, and the good order that prevailed around me, announced, in the man by whom it was governed, an intelligence ſuperior to that of all the ſavages I had before ſeen; and I knew not a ſingle individual, except old Haabas, that Neſtor of the Gonaqua nation, who could be compared to him. As I conceived for him a very high eſteem, it was a ſource to me of real pain that I was unacquainted with his language, and therefore not able freely to interrogate him reſpecting a thouſand objects which it would have been highly gratifying to me to know.

His

His habitation was ſuited to his ſupreme dignity. It was, indeed, a hut only, like thoſe of his ſubjects, and, like them, covered with the ſkins of animals; but it was much larger, as well as more elevated; and around it were ſix others, occupied by his family and deſtined for them alone.

The natural dryneſs of the country inhabited by the Kabobiquas obliges them to dig wells, for their own uſe as well as for their cattle; but as the ſame cauſe often dries up theſe wells, they are then forced to remove, and to ſeek elſewhere a ſoil more abundant in ſprings; for Fiſh-River, though conſiderable in the rainy ſeaſon, is often during the great heats entirely deſtitute of water.

The long journeys, which theſe too frequent emigrations compel them to undertake, and the intercourſe which they thence have with other nations, muſt neceſſarily inſpire them with ideas unknown to the ſettled tribes; and it would not be unnatural to ſuppoſe, that to this extenſion of ideas are they indebted for that ſuperiority of intelligence, which elevates them above their neighbours: but I have already ſpoken of a nation, who, like them, being forced

forced to dig wells, and to become wanderers, have remained, nevertheleſs, in the inferiority of the ſavage ſtate. Nature, perhaps, who has beſtowed upon the Kabobiquas bodies more agile, and a more intrepid character, may have endowed them alſo with ſuperior minds.

To the Kabobiquas I am indebted for my knowledge of the place where Orange-River has its ſource. I imagined that this river came from the central mountains; but they informed me, that, though in its progreſs it ſeemed to approach them, it took its riſe at a great diſtance in the mountains ſituated farther to the north-eaſt, and that it did not reach the former till after a winding courſe of conſiderable length.

In conſequence of one of their emigrations, they had formerly ſettled on its banks, ſixty leagues from the deſert which they now inhabited; but being moleſted by the Houzouanas, and diſappointed by the drought, they had removed from it, and came to encamp again in the ſpot where I found them.

Of all the African nations, they are the only people among whom I found any idea, however

however confuſed a one, of the exiſtence of a deity. I do not know whether it be from their own reflection, or the communications of other tribes, that they have acquired this ſublime knowledge, which would alone bring them near to a level with poliſhed nations; but they believe, as far as I have been able to learn from my people, that beyond the ſtars there exiſts a ſupreme being, who made and who governs all things.

I muſt however obſerve, that on this ſubject their ideas are vague, barren, and unproductive. They have no conception of the future exiſtence of the ſoul, or of rewards and puniſhments in another life; in ſhort, they have neither worſhip, ſacrifices, ceremonies, nor prieſts, and are total ſtrangers to what we call religion.

I am well aware, that Kolben advances a very different opinion reſpecting theſe Africans; but I have already given my ſentiments of that author. I will however acknowledge, that Kolben does not always deviate from the truth, and that his falſehoods even are founded upon facts, which he has wilfully

miſrepreſented, or adopted without ſufficient examination.

He has been vaguely told, that there are ſome tribes among whom circumciſion is uſual, and that there are others who deprive their males of one teſticle. On this authority he affirms, that all the different Hottentot hordes are circumciſed; and he deſcribes, in the moſt minute manner, and as an eye-witneſs, their manner of ſemi-caſtration, though he never went beyond the boundaries of the Cape.

It is natural that a father ſhould diſpoſe of his children, and that he ſhould himſelf perform the ceremony of their marriage, if the cuſtom of the country admits of a ceremony. With Kolben this ſimple practice is converted into a branch of religion, a ſacrifice, a ſuperſtitious dance, an object of ſorcery, &c. There is a high prieſt, who, being entruſted with the buſineſs of circumciſion, of ſemi-caſtration, and all the religious cuſtoms, alſo gives his benediction to marriage; and who, always maſter of an evacuation which unqueſtionably is leſs ſubject to our will than ſovereign over

it,

it, finiſhes the ceremony by pouring on the married couple a copious diſcharge of urine.

In the time of that author, the Kabobiquas were not known at the Cape, and I believe myſelf to be the firſt perſon by whom their name has been mentioned: but it is not impoſſible that he may have been told of ſome tribes, who, more courageous than others, or more expoſed to the attacks of ravenous animals, made it a rule to combat them, and, like the Kabobiquas, conſidered it as an honour to wear their ſpoils. A fact ſo ſimple, in his opinion, would not have made a ſufficiently brilliant figure in a relation of travels; nor would the reader have felt himſelf intereſted in an unadorned ſtory of ſavages, who, to preſerve their cattle, declare war againſt ſuch animals as are their enemies. He has, therefore, embelliſhed the narrative of this hunting, and converted it into an order of chivalry, to which no one is admitted but with particular ceremonies, performed by the high prieſt, and until he has given convincing proofs of his proweſs. But I have inſiſted too long on improbable falſehoods and abſurd

fables, and ſhall return, therefore, to my Kabobiquas.

Having procured every information in my power reſpecting theſe people, and added to my collection the birds found in their diſtrict, I was unwilling any longer, to fatigue my horſes in purſuing, to no purpoſe, animals which would not ſuffer me to approach them. I reſolved, therefore, to quit the horde, and to viſit another, eſtabliſhed at the diſtance of a long day's journey to the north-weſt. The chief gave me guides to accompany me thither; and on the 9th of February we reſumed our march.

We purſued our way for ſome time along very narrow paths, which however, in all probability, ſhortened our route; and at length, at the end of a defile, we diſcovered a plain which, extending towards the weſt, was bounded on the horizon by lofty mountains, the bottoms of which were covered with wood.

The verdure of theſe foreſts gave me reaſon to ſuppoſe that they were watered by ſome river; and they reminded me of the delightful

lightful borders of Fiſh-River, where I had ſojourned with ſo much pleaſure. I flattered myſelf that I ſhould in like manner find there proviſions in abundance for my company, new plants and animals to increaſe my collections, and objects with which I was unacquainted to gratify my curioſity. Accordingly I gave orders to my people to direct their courſe towards that quarter; and, though it was lengthening our way, we proceeded along the plain.

We had marched three hours, expoſed to the ſcorching heat of the ſun, when the horizon became ſuddenly darkened, and a frightful ſtorm ſeemed gathering over our heads. Long and frequent flaſhes of lightning darted between the clouds; the thunder roared in a moſt awful manner; and our animals by their perturbed and reſtleſs movements announced that the tempeſt was likely to be tremendous.

Without loſing time, my oxen were unloaded, my tent was erected, mats and ſkins were prepared to afford us ſhelter, and every one took a ſhare in the labour. Our precautions, however, were of no avail. The wind became ſo impetuous that nothing could reſiſt

86017

it; my tent was overturned; and I was reduced to the neceſſity of covering myſelf with the canvas, while my people ſecured themſelves in the beſt manner they could.

The rain in the mean time poured down in torrents, and ſo great was the deluge, that we might have ſuppoſed all Africa about to be inundated. The heavens, meanwhile, which ſeemed thus to diſſolve into water, appeared by the lightning to be every now and then actually on fire. The flaſhes embraced the whole atmoſphere; while the thunder, burſting on every ſide at once, made us all apprehend that we ſhould infallibly become its victims.

I had ſeen violent ſtorms in Caffraria; I was acquainted with thoſe of the Cape, ſo much dreaded by mariners and travellers; and I had not forgotten thoſe of Surinam, which, for two months together, riſing daily with the tide, announce the ſeaſon of drought: but till this period I had never beheld one ſo alarming; and, for the firſt time in my life, the ſound of thunder made me tremble.

It is true, to ſecure and preſerve my powder I had placed it near me under the canvaſs; and while I feared that the thunder might break over me, I feared alſo for my magazine, which,

which, by its exploſion, would have blown me up along with it.

My terror on account of this double danger continued more than an hour. The thunder having at length ceaſed, though the rain ſtill continued, each of us putting his head out from below his covering eagerly turned round his eyes to ſearch for his neighbour; and, ſurpriſed to find the whole company alive, we congratulated each other on having eſcaped ſo imminent a peril.

My Kabobiqua guides alone ſeemed to be delighted with the ſtorm. Accuſtomed, as they ſaid, to experience ſimilar and even more violent ones, they had, in general, their noiſe only without their advantage; but by this their wells would be filled with water, and freſh paſture would ſpring up for their cattle. They conſidered it, therefore, as a bleſſing; and ſo great was their joy, that they had ſat all the while quietly expoſed to the rain, without attempting in the ſmalleſt degree to ſhelter themſelves from it.

All our cattle, ſheep, oxen, and goats, during the ſtorm, had diſperſed themſelves in different quarters over the plain. Having col-

lected them, and being desirous to find a spot for an encampment near the wood and supposed river, I again pursued my route; for what could we do in the middle of a plain covered with water, and under a rain which, though in some measure abated, continued still to fall with violence? Already wet to the skin, I considered the inconvenience of being soaked a little longer as of no consequence.

My baggage, indeed, having been thoroughly drenched, was a double load to my oxen. The earth too, though sandy, had received so much rain, that it could not absorb the whole of it. In consequence, it was every where covered with pools; and the oxen, obliged to pass these cavities without knowing where they placed their feet, stumbled at every step, and ran the risk of being lamed under their burdens.

When we arrived at the edge of the wood, the rain fortunately ceased altogether; and the calm which followed allowed us to kindle fires to dry our baggage and clothes. The remainder of the day, and even the night, were employed in this business; but we were several times interrupted by the crashing of trees, which

which we heard very near us. This noiſe was occaſioned by elephants, which we drove away by firing our fuſees, and which, coming in queſt of paſturage in the neighbourhood of my camp, were breaking the branches to procure themſelves food.

Next morning, when day appeared, I ſaw in the plain, on an extent of ſcarcely half a league, more than a hundred of theſe animals collected together. They perceived us as diſtinctly as we perceived them; but they, nevertheleſs, appeared not to be in the leaſt ſtartled.

At this ſight my hunters were tranſported with joy. They immediately got ready their arms, and were magnifying, in imagination, the ivory with which this wonderful hunt was to ſupply them. For my part, being no longer a novice, the eagerneſs I had formerly felt was gone. Satiated in ſome degree with this amuſement, I did not forget the dangers with which it is almoſt always accompanied. The inconvenience, beſides, of tranſporting without a waggon the teeth of theſe animals, inſpired me with no great deſire of poſſeſſing them.

While ſuch were my ideas, a bird of a new ſpecies would have appeared more valuable to me than a dozen elephants. I began, therefore, to traverſe the foreſt; and I had the ſatisfaction to kill two charming animals of the feathered race, a male and a female. They conſiderably reſemble the ſpecies of the ring-dove, though the difference is ſufficient, in my opinion, to entitle them to a ſeparate claſs, as they have a bill much larger than pigeons in general. Their claws are alſo more hooked, and their toes broader and flatter. In ſhort, the moſt beautiful colours ornament their plumage, which, on the body, is, in general, of a brilliant green. The feathers of the wings are bordered with an elegant jonquille yellow, which is alſo the colour of the belly of the male. On the top of each wing is a large violet ſpot; and the feet of both are red. This charming ſpecies, entirely new, will form a part of my ornithology, in which I ſhall give figures of them both.

The ſkirt of wood near which I had encamped lay in a direction N. ¼ W. which was that of my route; and, by keeping along the edge of it, I knew I ſhould arrive at the horde I in-

I intended to viſit. After marching ſome hours, we found ourſelves, however, ſtopped by a torrent, which, falling from the mountains, had been prodigiouſly ſwelled by the rain of the late ſtorm; and, as it was neceſſary to wait till it ſhould ſubſide and become fordable, I was obliged to encamp on its banks. The place was agreeable; and I found in it birds of various kinds, which made me ſufficient amends for the uneaſineſs occaſioned by the delay.

Klaas, who by long practice had become a naturaliſt, and who knew as well as I what my collection contained, and what would be new in it, exerted himſelf with indefatigable ardour to augment it. He killed and brought to me a magnificent bird with which I was entirely unacquainted, and which exhibited characteriſtics ſo confuſed that I was at a loſs how to claſs it.

On the firſt view I ſhould have taken it for a cuckoo; but, though it had ſome relation to that genus, it did not in reality belong to it; for its feet were ſtronger, and its claws more hooked and notched: beſides, Klaas, before he fired, ſaw it hook itſelf to the trunk of a tree,

tree, in the ſame manner as the wood-pecker, and, like the wood-pecker alſo, ſtrike its bill againſt the bark.

Its claws and toes are abſolutely the ſame, and divided preciſely as are thoſe of that bird; but its tail is not capable of ſupporting it, as is the caſe with the tail of the wood-pecker. It does not, therefore, climb, but ſupports itſelf merely by hooking its claws in the bark of trees, on which it ſeeks for its food. It has a large crooked bill, and is, in ſhort, one of thoſe ſpecies which ſhow the deficiency of our ſyſtems of ornithology. I ſhall not omit this beautiful bird in my deſcriptions.

The ſwell of the torrent did not continue longer than twenty-four hours, and the ſecond day I was able to croſs it without wetting my feet. We were now only three leagues from the horde, and ſome of the people who compoſed it, having at a diſtance obſerved my camp, approached towards us to reconnoitre it.

As they ſoon diſtinguiſhed my Kabobiqua guides, their neighbours and friends, they advanced to pay me a viſit. I inſpired them with a favourable opinion of me by a few preſents;

ſents; and I gave them for their chief a ſmall portion of tobacco, deſiring them to inform him, that I intended to pay my reſpects to him in perſon, and that next morning I would be at the kraal with my whole company. We were not able, however, to ſet out till after dinner, becauſe the oxen I had purchaſed at the laſt horde had returned thither during the night, and it was neceſſary to diſpatch ſome of my people to bring them back.

The chief, accompanied by his whole horde, came two-thirds of the way to meet me; and I found him waiting my arrival on the banks of a rivulet. As my appearance excited among this horde the ſame eagerneſs, the ſame ſurpriſe, and the ſame curioſity, as among the horde I had quitted, I ſhall not repeat what I have ſaid already. It conſiſted alſo of Kabobiquas; and conſequently their manners, cuſtoms, arms, and character, were the ſame.

The only difference I obſerved was, that in the former the men only wore ſandals; but in this horde they were worn by every body; men, women, and children. This cuſtom, however, does not proceed either from luxury or effeminacy, but from an indiſpenſible and neceſſary

neceſſary precaution, impoſed by the rocky nature of their country, and by the mimoſas with which it is covered. This tree bears a great number of prickles, ſo that the earth around it is always ſtrewed with them; and it is to prevent their feet from being wounded by them that they habituate themſelves to the uſe of ſandals.

As every novelty in dreſs among ſtrangers appears almoſt always ridiculous, my people, accuſtomed to go bare-footed, conſidered this as altogether ſingular; and, to diſtinguiſh the new horde from all thoſe we had before ſeen, they called them the horde of the ſandal-bearers.

Leſs numerous than the former, it conſiſted only of two hundred individuals. They had alſo fewer cattle; both becauſe the ſoil, on account of its poverty, afforded little paſturage, and becauſe the Houzouanas made frequent incurſions into their territory to plunder them. Not long before my arrival, they had carried off thirty oxen; and, though the chief had armed all his people to endeavour to recover them, he had been able to retake only ſix; and theſe even were ſo ſeverely wounded with arrows and aſſagays, that it was neceſſary to

kill

kill them on the ſpot, and to carry them to the kraal in pieces for proviſion.

Notwithſtanding their poverty, theſe ſavages diſplayed the diſintereſtedneſs and generoſity peculiar to their nation. Though I had diſtributed among them, in preſents, only a few paltry articles, they brought every evening to my camp a conſiderable quantity of milk. During the time I ſpent among them, which was eight days (becauſe, the mimoſas being in full bloſſom, I found thereon many inſects and birds), ſome followed me to the chace with a view of rendering me any little ſervice in their power, and others ran every where about the neighbourhood to procure me inſects. On my part, I made it my duty and a pleaſure to oblige them. My markſmen went out to hunt for them rhinoceroſes and elephants; and though they were not able, during my whole ſtay, to get near one of theſe ſhy animals, they killed nearly a ſcore of antelopes, and ſeveral buffaloes, the greater part of which were given up to the horde. The buffaloes were exactly of the ſame kind as thoſe we had killed on the eaſtern coaſt. They were

were only much larger; but their fleſh being leaner was leſs delicate.

My own excurſions alſo proved ſucceſsful; and I found for my collection two rare ſpecies of birds. One of them was the roller, known under the name of the Senegal roller; the other the roſe-coloured bee-eater, called the Nubian bee-eater. By adding to the denomination of theſe birds the name of the country where they are found, naturaliſts, doubtleſs, did not mean to aſſert that they exiſt no where elſe; but it was there probably they were firſt diſcovered, though, like many others which bear the names of countries, they may be met with in a different part of the globe.

Buffaloes were ſo common in this diſtrict, that they came and fed quietly at a little diſtance from my camp; but, when we attempted to approach them, they betook themſelves to flight, and retired to the woods. This ſuſpicious and haggard animal carefully avoids danger, and it is only when attacked and obliged to defend himſelf that he ſeems to be ſenſible of the immenſe ſtrength which nature has beſtowed upon him.

With

With regard to giraffes, none now exiſt in this diſtrict, or in thoſe I had quitted. A few old men, however, aſſured me that in their youth they had ſeen ſome here; and, from the deſcription they gave of them, it appeared as if they ſpoke truth. I do not know why the caſe is different at preſent; but I conclude from the circumſtance, that, if there are animals which occupy a great latitude of country, there are others that can live only in a very narrow zone.

What principally engaged the attention of my Kabobiqua horde was a dread of the Houzouanas. From morning to night I heard them pronounce nothing but the word Houzouana. If they deſired my interpreters to ſay any thing to me, it always related to the hoſtilities or robberies of theſe people.

That active nation, more dreaded than they ought to be, had an eſtabliſhment at the diſtance of about twenty leagues towards the north, and occupied a chain of mountains extending from north to eaſt. As the barrenneſs of the ſoil which they poſſeſſed prevented them from forming regular and numerous hordes, they divided themſelves into ſmall

bodies, more or leſs conſiderable, according to places and circumſtances; and, as the ſame cauſe often reduced them to a great ſcarcity of proviſions, they made incurſions into the territories of their neighbours, and carried off their flocks. Theſe plunderers, living by rapine, are ſo much feared in the whole neighbourhood on account of their valour, that a few of them are ſufficient to put to flight a whole horde of two hundred men completely armed; and if the party who have been robbed follow them, when they retire with their booty, it is rather to aſſure themſelves of their retreat than to attack them.

The Kabobiqua horde itſelf, though belonging to a nation more warlike than any of the other tribes around, were equally timid in regard to the Houzouanas. Taught from their infancy to conſider them as formidable, they thought reſiſtance uſeleſs, and took no precautions to enable them either to prevent or repel their attacks.

They had, however, recently concluded a treaty of peace with the neareſt diviſion; and, in order to enſure tranquillity, had engaged to pay them annually a certain number of cattle.

This

This bears ſome reſemblance to a commencement of civilization; but theſe ſhameful and humiliating conditions were broken almoſt as ſoon as concluded. The Houzouanas of the more diſtant diviſions pretended, that the Kabobiquas had not entered into the treaty without a view to advantage; and that they would conſequently continue their hoſtilities and depredations. Even the party which had accepted the peace was ſuppoſed to countenance their incurſions, to inform them of the moſt favourable moments, and to ſhare in the fruits of theſe plundering expeditions.

Thus every thing conſpires to prove what man is in the ſolitary ſtate, and what he is deſtined to become when he begins to combine in groupes, and to feel on all ſides the vicinity of his fellow men.

When the chief ſaw the effect of my fuſees, and was ſenſible how far ſuch arms rendered me ſuperior to his enemies, he endeavoured to animate me againſt them, and to intereſt me in his quarrel. Deſirous of being acquainted with and viſiting that nation, I often interrogated him reſpecting it, and requeſted information; but he anſwered all my queſtions

either by advice or complaints, the viſible intention of which was to irritate me againſt it.

He apprehended, however, on the other hand, that afterwards, when I ſhould be gone, the Houzouanas might come and wreak their vengeance on his horde, for having directed me to their reſidence, and armed me againſt them. Accordingly, employing my interpreters; ſometimes to inſpire me with an envenomed hatred againſt theſe plunderers, and ſometimes to adviſe me not to advance farther, his mind ſeemed to be continually at variance with itſelf. He was ignorant that the different tribes through whoſe territories I had paſſed ſpoke to me of them with the ſame terror, and that all his diſcourſe produced no other effect than to increaſe my deſire of knowing them.

With my numerous caravan, my diſtant and frequent hunting excurſions, and the multiplicity of my nocturnal fires, I could not remain long unknown to ſo wandering a people. I entertained no doubt that, in the courſe of their roving, they muſt already have obſerved me; and that if they had not yet ſhown themſelves, it was becauſe the noiſe of my fire-arms, which reſounded night and

day, had checked their inclination to attack me.

What they were to the Kabobiquas, I was to them; and this ſtate of terror into which they were thrown gave me no little uneaſineſs; becauſe, by keeping them at a diſtance, it prevented me from having an opportunity of knowing them. Whatever ſuperiority the nature of my arms might give me, I had no intention of abuſing it; every ſpecies of inſult being contrary to my principles. To execute the plan of travels I had formed required many friends; I had every where endeavoured ſo to act as to procure them; and I was fully convinced that the Houzouanas, ſo much dreaded and ſo much decried, would be equally among the number.

My people, however, were of a different opinion. By my converſations with the chief, they learned my deſign; for, as I was obliged to employ four different interpreters, it could be no ſecret.

When it was known through the camp, I obſerved ſymptoms of univerſal alarm; the men and women talked to each other with apparent uneaſineſs; and the different tribes

aſſembled and held conferences together.—Though I underſtood nothing of their diſcourſe, the myſterious manner in which they conducted themſelves, and the reſtleſs air of their countenances, announced a ſtorm, or, in other words, that a conſpiracy was on the point of burſting out.

The Nimiquas, being the moſt timid, were the firſt to explain their ſentiments; and, on my part, I had reaſon to be glad that the plot began to ſhew itſelf by the declaration of theſe poltroons, deſtitute alike of ſpirit and energy. They came to inform me, that they would neither conſent to enter a country of which none of my company had any knowledge, nor expoſe themſelves to the attacks of a nation which every other nation held in horror; and that they would conſequently leave me, if I perſiſted in my reſolution.

I made to their ſpeech no other reply than by a burſt of laughter; and, taking them at their word, gave them leave to depart that moment, well aſſured that they had not the courage to put their threat in execution: becauſe, in order to return, they had to traverſe countries infeſted by the Boſhmen, through which they

they would never venture to paſs alone. They were compelled, therefore, to remain under my protection, and by their exceſſive cowardice were reduced to the neceſſity of ſuffering themſelves to be conducted wherever I might chooſe to lead them. The caſe was preciſely the ſame with all their companions.

Each band, however, came to notify their departure; but, when they ought to have ſeparated from me, none of them durſt move. So great was their terror, that had they even been advanced on their journey, leaving the Houzouanas behind them, they would ſtill have been afraid of being attacked by theſe people.

My Cape Hottentots, though equally cowardly, concealed their timidity with more art: but reſpecting them I had other cauſes of uneaſineſs. Accuſtomed to an indolent life in the colonies, and continually regretting the loſs of certain conveniences of which they found themſelves deprived, they were by no means calculated for enduring fatigues ſimilar to thoſe which it was neceſſary for us to ſupport. Their health was affected by the difference of the climate into which they had

been removed; and if I had not taken the precaution to make a long ſtay at each of the ſtations where I halted, they would not have been able to perform the journey, and muſt one after another have periſhed on the way.

This new plan alarmed them more than any preceding one: but, as they poſſeſſed a greater ſhare of acuteneſs than their comrades, and were conſequently leſs free and open, they had addreſs enough to conceal their puſillanimity under the moſt ſpecious pretences. To ſpeak to me of the Houzouanas would have been imprudently betraying themſelves; they did not even ſo much as pronounce their name; but, affecting to ſhew themſelves good fathers and good huſbands, they reminded me, with feigned tenderneſs, of their wives and children, whom they would perhaps have beaten had they been near them. They talked alſo of their fatigues and their health; and, above all, of the local and particular obſtacles which would ariſe in the execution of my project.

Could I have believed the people of the horde, I had indeed to traverſe a deſert which would require

require a journey of five days, and in which I ſhould find no kind of food or refreſhment, either for my people or my animals; not the ſmalleſt trace of vegetation; not even vegetative earth. It was only, they ſaid, a vaſt ocean of ſand, where it was impoſſible to move one ſtep without ſinking up to the knees; and this ſand, moveable and as light as duſt, was ſo fine that we ſhould run the riſk of being ſmothered upon occaſion of the leaſt wind, if we did not periſh by thirſt, hunger, fatigue, and diſtreſs, before we had accompliſhed half the way.

This diſcouraging intelligence was confirmed, in appearance, by the conduct of the Kabobiquas themſelves. Notwithſtanding the requeſt of their chief, notwithſtanding the temptation of the preſents I offered them, not a ſingle individual of the horde would conſent to ſerve me as a guide. This refuſal, however, did not alarm me. Whatever terrifying aſpect it wore, I aſcribed it to the fear with which theſe deſpicable poltroons were poſſeſſed, that, by conſenting, they ſhould certainly deliver themſelves into the hands of the Houzouanas. The more they perſiſted in repreſenting

ſenting the country as extraordinary; the more was I inflamed with a deſire of viſiting it. I ſaw there, in my mind's eye, new objects of natural hiſtory, diſcoveries of importance to commerce; and I ſuppoſed that it would furniſh me with details proper to awaken curioſity, and the more ſingular as no one before me had ever had an opportunity of becoming acquainted with them.

With regard to the frightful accounts that had been given me, I ſaw nothing in them but exaggerated tales, which, paſſing ſucceſſively through the mouths of my different interpreters, were enlarged in proportion to the fear of each. And after all, as the Houzouanas advanced as far as the horde to plunder it, I might as well go to them, as ſuffer them to come to me: there was no more danger in the one caſe than in the other.

I confeſs, however, that what I had heard reſpecting the nature of the ſoil did not appear to be entirely void of foundation. In the courſe of my journey to the habitation of the Sandal-bearers, when I turned towards the wood I found the ground ſo thickly covered with a greyiſh duſt, that it concealed not only the

the ſoil, but even the graſs and the pebbles. This uncommon phenomenon ſtruck me too much not to be obſerved with attention, and it brought to my mind certain accounts which I had formerly read, and gave riſe to reflections, the reſult of which appeared to me intereſting.

According to the learned traveller Haſſelquiſt, "there is no country in the world, if we except Poland, that contains in its boſom ſuch a large quantity of common ſalt as Egypt. The bottom of the ſoil is ſcarcely compoſed of any thing elſe than mountains of it... If pits be dug at certain diſtances, they yield a reddiſh ſalt, mixed with calcareous earth, called by the Egyptians of the preſent day *natron*... They conſider wells of freſh water as a miracle... Without the aſſiſtance of the Nile, Egypt would be uninhabitable; as, from the ſame cauſe, is a part of Eaſtern Arabia... Even the blackeſt ſoil contains abundance of ſaline particles; as is proved, every morning before ſun-riſe, by the quantity of white ſalt with which the ſurface of it is covered, almoſt in the ſame manner as one ſees in Sweden, in the end of autumn, the

" the earth covered with hoar froſt, or a thin " coat of ſnow." The author adds, " A ſoil " impregnated with ſalt muſt produce ſalſugi- " nous plants; and, indeed, ſuch are found in " Egypt, and in greater number than in any " other part of the Levant."

Egypt is ſituated on the north ſide of the tropic of Cancer, and I found myſelf near that of Capricorn; that is to ſay, at the ſame diſtance from the equator. What Haſſelquiſt had taught me reſpecting the northern part of Africa, I found to be the caſe with the ſouthern under the ſame latitude, which ſtruck me with aſtoniſhment. I wondered why nature preſented ſuch an evident reſemblance in two countries, diſtant almoſt twelve hundred leagues, though lying under the ſame parallels.

I am no chemiſt, and I have often had occaſion to regret my deficiency in that reſpect. It is much to be wiſhed, that in travellers every branch of uſeful knowledge were united; but each is generally directed in his ſtudies by a taſte ſo predominant as almoſt to exclude every other; and, as a naturaliſt, I had abandoned myſelf entirely to the animal kingdom. Every thing,

thing, however, had ſhewn me, without being a chemiſt, the ſame immenſe quantity of common ſalt here which Haſſelquiſt obſerved in Egypt; and I thought even that I began to find alſo natron.

In advancing from the Cape, I had conſtantly remarked, that the water, which at firſt was a little brackiſh, became more and more impregnated with ſalt as I approached towards the equator. Nothing was ſo uncommon as water perfectly ſweet; for even the torrents were conſiderably ſaltiſh. Scarcely had a pool been heated by the ſun, when I ſaw formed upon it a cruſt of hard cryſtallized ſalt. Every thing was ſalt, the plants not excepted; and according as the ſtructure of their fibres was more or leſs favourable to the infiltration of ſalt, each of them was more or leſs acrid.

Among the ſalſuginous plants of Egypt, Haſſelquiſt reckons ſalt-wort, and particularly ſeveral kinds of chenopodium* and meſembryanthemum †; and theſe vegetables are indigenous alſo in the ſouthern part of Africa,

* Gooſe-foot. † Fig-marygold.

and,

and very abundant, eſpecially in the country of the Kabobiquas.

In fine, we are informed by all travellers, that the Egyptians, notwithſtanding the ſalubrity of their climate, are ſubject to blindneſs; a melancholy infirmity, which muſt be principally aſcribed to the ſaline duſt which is ſo frequently driven into their eyes by the wind: and there were alſo many blind perſons in the countries of which I ſpeak. I ſaw none any where elſe; whereas all the inhabitants here were more or leſs affected with a diſorder of the eyes.

This ſtriking reſemblance between two countries, ſeparated by the whole breadth of the torrid zone, could not fail to excite my curioſity. I conjectured that the duſt with which I ſaw the plain covered was natron; I imagined that I ſhould find ſtill more as I advanced farther into the country; and the ſoil without vegetation, of which the Sandal-bearers had ſpoken, ſtrengthened this conjecture, and added one motive more to thoſe I already felt for carrying my intended project into execution.

The oppoſition made to it by my people preſented

preſented nothing to my view capable of ſuſpending it. Accuſtomed to their petty inſurrections, I was no way intimidated; and I laughed equally at the objections and ſurly diſcontent of ſome, as at the cowardice and doleful lamentations of others.

For the moment, I conſidered my Hottentots only as children, who whine and cry when they are ſeparated from their nurſe. Since it had become a part of my plan to be accompanied and announced by the ſavages of one horde to thoſe of another, they were the part of my company with which I could beſt diſpenſe. This plan was indeed ſo eaſy and ſo economical, and my Cape Hottentots were now ſo uſeleſs and even ſo burdenſome, that I perhaps ſhould have congratulated myſelf upon being rid of them.

Beſides, the manner in which I now travelled required neither ſo many people nor the ſame preparation. I had commenced my journey with waggons: a method that was attended with numberleſs inconveniencies.

Independently of accidents and delays, which they too often occaſioned, and of the impoſſibility of repairing them in caſe they ſhould

lays; and at the ſame time I was certain of every where finding ſuch as I had occaſion for.

In conſequence of my plan to viſit the Houzouanas, I had ſtill a third trial to make. As none of the Sandal-bearers would ſerve me as guides, the means in which I confided, and which had hitherto ſucceeded, of keeping up a communication from one horde to another ſuddenly failed me. Their refuſal interrupted the chain of my correſpondence; and I was obliged to deviſe ſome method of ſupplying this want, and of re-eſtabliſhing it myſelf. If I ſhould be able to make my way without them to the people whom they had painted to me in colours ſo black, and if I ſhould ſucceed in conciliating their friendſhip, I had nothing more to fear: there was no nation with which I might not hope to become acquainted; and the end and object of my journey would thus be previouſly enſured.

My excurſion to the Houzouanas, however, could be only of ſhort duration; and it was even become impoſſible for me to proceed beyond that nation. As I had propoſed to quit my camp at Orange-River but for a few months, I had taken with

break, a conſiderable and ſuperfluous expence was neceſſary to ſupport them and to keep them in motion. They required a proviſion of tools and of iron; a great number of men to conduct them and to look after the cattle; and, above all, double relays—an object attended with much coſt, and extremely difficult to be procured; becauſe, at a certain diſtance from the colonies, it was not eaſy to find cattle ready trained for the draught. I have already mentioned with how much trouble and difficulty I was able to procure, among the ſnowy mountains of Camis, a few wretched oxen, which I ſoon ſaw periſh on the road without being of any uſe to me.

When I left my camp on the banks of Orange-River, I had been particularly anxious to be aſſured whether it would be poſſible for my carriages to follow me in my future courſe. I alſo propoſed to myſelf to ſound, in ſome meaſure, different ſavage nations, to try their character, and endeavour to learn how far I could truſt myſelf to them, and rely on their aſſiſtance. The knowledge of theſe two points was abſolutely neceſſary to enable me to continue my journey without

it

it I could hope for no ſucceſs; and I ſhould perhaps have been ſtopped at the very firſt ſtep.

My ſecond trial had anſwered to my wiſhes. Wherever I went, I found friends, and met with truſty men, who conducted me from one horde to another, and whoſe ſervice and aid I purchaſed for mere trifles. Free as the air, I depended on no one. The people thus acquired, oppoſed to my will neither difficulties, delay, nor refuſal; and every thing ſeemed to announce to me that I might traverſe all Africa.

With regard to my waggons, it was in vain to think of them. In proportion as you advance from the colonies towards the tropic, the country becomes more and more rugged and uneven. Nothing is ſeen on all ſides but mountains and rocks, the defiles of which are for the moſt part as ſteep as precipices, and conſequently impaſſable for wheel-carriages.

I ſaw myſelf reduced, therefore, to the neceſſity of travelling with oxen of burden—a method much leſs embarraſſing and infinitely more economical; ſince, by requiring fewer cattle, I had no need to carry with me uſeleſs re-

with me a ſmall quantity only of merchandiſe, which was much leſſened by circumſtances, and almoſt entirely exhauſted. And what hope could I have of gaining friends when I had no longer preſents to make them?

I know that the diſpoſition of the ſavage is naturally good; that is to ſay, he will do injury to no individual, if that individual does no injury to him: and perhaps even gratuitous ſervices may be obtained from him, for intereſt is by no means his ruling paſſion. If he deſire with avidity the objects that are ſhewn him, it is rather through childiſh curioſity than any real want. Nevertheleſs, we muſt not expect to receive every kind of aſſiſtance, unleſs we hold out to him the attraction of reward.

Another reaſon which urged me to haſten my return to Orange-River, was the ſtate in which I had left my camp. My giraffe, expoſed upon ſtakes, might ſpoil; my collections, the fruit of eleven months labour, ran the ſame riſk; and I had to expect from Swanepoel more good-will than real care. By committing to his charge the general inſpection of my caravan, I had aſſigned to him an

employment which, ſuited to his age, required but little fatigue. He was accuſtomed to this inactive kind of life; for, when he had ſwept my tent, and made my coffee or my tea, he conceived himſelf to have diſcharged the duties of the whole day.

In ſuch a character, I had little reaſon to expect that activity which would be required to keep my camp in order during my long abſence. Beſides, who could inſure the life of an old man! And, even if he ſhould only be ſick, what cauſe ſhould I have for alarm reſpecting the fruits of ſo much labour!

In the midſt of this perplexity, and theſe wavering determinations, occaſioned by the uncertainty of the means to carry them into execution, I reſolved to conſult my faithful Klaas. When under embarraſſing circumſtances, this worthy Hottentot was generally my counſellor; and I always found that he poſſeſſed a ſhare of good ſenſe equal to his attachment and courage. I, therefore, communicated to him my reflections, my new plans, and told him the difficulties as well as the hopes with which I foreſaw they would be attended.

He

He liſtened with great attention; and then, ſtriking his hand againſt mine, ſaid, that he agreed with me reſpecting my new arrangement, and particularly my deſign of travelling in future with oxen of burden only. "With re-"gard," added he, "to your deſire of paying a "viſit to the Houzouanas, I have no occaſion to "aſſure you I am ready this inſtant to depart. "You know that, wherever you may chooſe "to go, Klaas will follow you faithfully and "with pleaſure; but if you think it neceſſary, "as I do, to have a few truſty perſons along "with us, I can anſwer for five of my com-"rades, upon whom you may rely, even to "death, as firmly as you may upon me."

This proteſtation of attachment from a man of approved zeal, and the aſſurance he gave me of the courage and reſolution of his comrades, afforded me ſo much ſatisfaction, that, in the firſt tranſports of my joy, I was almoſt tempted to diſmiſs all thoſe who were of no uſe to me, and to ſet out that very moment. A return of reflection, however, checked me; I ſaw that the delay of half a day would be of advantage to make preparation. I conſequently put off my departure till the next

morning; and, giving orders to the five men recommended by Klaas to hold themſelves in readineſs to ſtart early, I declared to the reſt that I would leave them maſters of their conduct; but that I was ready, nevertheleſs, to admit into my company ſuch as might have the courage to follow me.

My new plan was to viſit the Houzouanas, and to return to my camp at Orange-River, not by the route I had purſued in coming hither, but by any other which might give me an opportunity of becoming acquainted with new hordes. When I arrived at the camp, I intended to reſume my waggons, to proceed by a different road to the Cape, where I meant to leave them, and to begin, at a better choſen period and only with oxen of burden, a third journey, in which I expected more ſucceſs than in my ſecond; and which I was deſirous of undertaking through the countries ſituated on the eaſt of the Camis.

To execute this plan, I foreſaw that I ſhould have occaſion for the ſervices of the Houzouanas; and on that account I was anxious to put them to the teſt, and endeavour to ſecure their friendſhip. Beſides, my new mode of travelling,

travelling, lighter as well as more commodious, and at the ſame time leſs tedious, ſeemed likely to furniſh me with more abundant reſources, and to facilitate diſcoveries, with the hopes of which my imagination was already enchanted.

At break of day, my whole caravan was in readineſs to depart. During the night, the Greater Nimiquas held a council together, and, as I foreſaw, reſolved to accompany me, not through courage or attachment, but from mere cowardice, and a dread of being attacked by the Boſhmen, if they attempted to return without an eſcort.

My Hottentots, who thought themſelves much ſuperior to the Greater Nimiquas, and who were aſhamed to appear leſs courageous, affected to ſhew ſtill more ardour; and their example induced the reſt of the company to imitate them. My Koraquas, Kaminouquas, Leſſer Nimiquas, and the people of Baſter's horde, all vied with each other in eagerneſs to be of the party, and each ſtrove who ſhould ſhew the greateſt impatience to depart. The Sandal-bearers, whoſe accounts had excited ſo much terror, were now objects of laughter:

they became the ſubject of univerſal ridicule; and it was ſaid, that they had refuſed to accompany me, becauſe they were afraid to wet or ſpoil their ſandals.

Before I thought of departing, I took care to get from them ſuch information as they were able to give me reſpecting the route I ought to purſue. They told me that, after marching a day or two towards the north, I ſhould find a vaſt plain terminated on the eaſt by a chain of mountains; that I muſt croſs this plain; and that among the rocks of the mountains I ſhould find the eſtabliſhment of the Houzouanas of whom they had ſpoken.

Agreeably to theſe inſtructions I proceeded towards the eaſt; and we halted about noon on the borders of a ſalt lake, in which we found a cryſtallized ſheet of ſalt. It had probably been formed and had floated at the ſurface; but the ſtorm, a few days before, had carried thither ſo much rain, that it was now depreſſed, and ſituated between the two waters.

While my people were ſitting on the bank of this lake, getting ready for dinner, they obſerved four men, at a diſtance, croſſing the plain. At this ſight they were almoſt petrified with

with terror; they cried out immediately that they were Houzouanas; and, though they were themſelves ten or twelve to one, they were already afraid of being attacked. The courage diſplayed in the morning vaniſhed in an inſtant; the whole company ſuddenly loſt their appetite; and I know not what might have been the conſequence of this general alarm, had not Klaas haſtened as expeditiouſly as poſſible to inform me of what was paſſing.

Having applied my perſpective glaſs to my eye, to examine the four ſtrangers, I perceived them to be men apparently of an extraordinary ſize; whereas the Houzouanas, according to the account which I had heard, were little better than pigmies, not exceeding at moſt four feet and a half in height. I fired ſome ſhots, in order that they might obſerve us—which they ſoon did; but the reports alarmed them, and they diſappeared in an inſtant.

Among the inconveniencies of this journey, there was one reſpecting which the Sandal-bearers had given me no intimation. The ground over which we were obliged to travel was hollow and ſwelled up; ſo that, like a piece of paſtry expoſed to too violent a heat, it

it formed a cruſt ſeparated from the ſoil, and might not only have concealed innumerable families of little animals, but would have allowed them to proceed ſeveral leagues, in all directions, between the two ſtrata.

The greater part of my oxen, and thoſe particularly that were heavily loaded, ſunk half a foot deep at every ſtep; and theſe continual falls tormented and rendered them almoſt furious. We ourſelves were not exempted from the ſame accidents. In a moment when we leaſt expected it, the ground would give way under us; and it may be readily conceived how much we muſt be fatigued and put out of patience by ſo incommodious a march.

To this another inconvenience, ſtill more inſupportable and diſcouraging, was added. I mean that of the ſaline cryſtallization, which, as it lay every where diſperſed, and was ſtruck upon by the fervid rays of the ſun, ſcorched us by its burning reverberation, at the ſame time that its reflection dazzled us. The light duſt by which it was covered, and which formed a part of it, was raiſed around us by the ſmalleſt breath of wind: we ourſelves alſo, by the motion neceſſary in walking, excited

cited thick clouds of it, which flew into our faces, and inflamed our eyes; and, as we were obliged to inſpire it in breathing, our noſtrils became ulcerated by it. Millions of gnats could not have been more intolerable. Our lips even were attacked by it, and in ſuch a manner that the blood ſtarted from them when we made the leaſt effort to ſpeak; ſo that to pronounce a ſentence was next to torture.

To eſcape this ſcourge, I made preparations after dinner for reſuming my journey; but a ſtorm that came on ſuſpended our march, and obliged us to paſs the night near the lake.

This diſappointment, however, was attended with ſome benefit to my people. "Neceſſity," ſays a French poet, "is the mother of inven-"tion." In the journey of the morning, they had ſuffered extremely from the heat of the ſun. To ſecure themſelves from it in future, they converted all the dried ſheep and antelopes' ſkins which they had in their poſſeſſion into round hats; which, being drawn down over the ears, and tied with thongs under the chin, gave them a ridiculous kind of reſemblance to the Alſacians in the neighbourhood of Straſ-

burgh,

burgh, when they go into the fields to weed their pulſe and their tobacco.

The acute pains which I experienced in my eyes and throat, and the dread of experiencing others ſtill more dangerous, induced me alſo to uſe ſome precautions. It was not, like my people, to ſhelter my head; for my hat, flapped and cloſely ſtuck round with oſtrich feathers, was in that reſpect a ſufficient defence; but I wiſhed to make a ſcreen to preſerve my eyes from the dazzling reverberation of the ſun, and that might ſerve at the ſame time to keep off thoſe clouds of cauſtic duſt by which my face was ulcerated.

With this view, I formed of wire the ſkeleton of a ſmall umbrella, which I covered with a handkerchief, and which, being ſufficiently light that it could in no manner fatigue me, became exceedingly uſeful. My people thought it ſo commodious, that they all wiſhed to imitate it; and, changing the form of the ſkins which they had placed upon their heads, they transformed them into umbrellas. Theſe articles were awkwardly made, I allow; but they had their advantage, and were a great reſource to us on our journey.

Some

Some of my people, however, fell upon an invention ſtill more ridiculous. They affixed to ſome poles the large ſkin of a buffalo, and carried it above their heads in the form of a canopy.

The women alone ſupported with courage the extreme fatigue of ſo extraordinary a journey. Nothing could diſcompoſe their good humour. Being of a cheerful diſpoſition, and always ſportful, they indulged in pleaſantry at the expence of the men and their ridiculous appearance. For me, I was on foot like the women, and braved every fatigue; both that I might ſpare my horſes, and not hazard my life upon animals which, frequently ſtumbling and falling on their knees, would infallibly have broken my neck. Under the preſent circumſtances, the indefatigable courage of the women was an invaluable advantage. By exciting their ſhame, they acted as a ſpur on the indolence and backwardneſs of the men, who, ignorant of the particular motives of my journey, conſidered it only as the effects of extravagant temerity.

In the courſe of the day we experienced, notwithſtanding our precautions and our um-

brellas, an increaſe of our ſufferings. Owing either to the action of the exceſſive heat, or to the effect of the climate or the ſaline duſt, we were ſeized with frequent bleedings at the noſe and intolerable pains in the head.

A fever, which ſeemed to accompany theſe ſymptoms, brought on, what my Hottentots had never experienced, and what I alſo felt for the firſt time, a confuſion of ſight and giddineſs, or rather a real delirium. We thought we ſaw before us waggons, towns or kraals, numerous flocks, and, in ſhort, a thouſand different objects, which changed their form and produced others, in proportion as we advanced.

A remarkable circumſtance, which filled us with alarm, and made us ſenſible of the danger of our ſituation, was, that none of us ſaw the ſame thing; and that what to one was a mountain was a river to another. Soon, however, we learned to miſtruſt theſe fantaſtical viſions; and, being aſſured by experience that they were only imaginary, we no longer believed in their reality.

The effect, indeed, was not unremitted. At ſome moments it entirely ceaſed, and permitted

our

our eyes to ſee objects as they really exiſted. At others, on the contrary, our viſual faculty was ſuddenly annihilated, we experienced a temporary loſs of ſight, and for ſome minutes remained as it were blind.

All theſe contradictory effects, which deſtroyed each other, were by my people aſcribed to ſorcery. For my part, I conſidered them as occaſioned principally by the action of the ſun; for, though it was upwards of ſeven weeks ſince it had quitted the tropic, and conſequently, in advancing towards the equator, it darted upon us only oblique rays, it had nevertheleſs ſo heated the earth, and the atmoſphere was ſo ſcorching, that the thermometer remained conſtantly above 100°.

Whatever may have been the cauſe of our ſufferings, it had an influence on my conſtitution. Since that period I have been ſubject to hemorrhages and head-achs, to which I was before a ſtranger, and with which, perhaps, I ſhall be occaſionally attacked during the remainder of my life.

I have as yet ſaid nothing of the tormenting thirſt to which we were condemned during the whole journey. We, indeed, found

every

every where abundance of water, left by the ſtorm the preceding evening; but the earth which it had waſhed away in its courſe made it ſo ſalt that it was impoſſible to drink it. My cattle, however, accuſtomed to brackiſh ſprings, did not reject it: which was a fortunate circumſtance. For my part, I would rather have ſwallowed ſo much brine. However, to our extreme joy, we found here and there in the cavities of the rocks ſome ſmall pools formed by the rain, the water of which was drinkable.

On the third day, I at length diſtinguiſhed the plain and the mountains which had been deſcribed to me by the Sandal-bearers. When I make uſe of the word plain, the reader muſt not affix to it the ſtrict meaning which it has in the French language. In Africa, this name is given to certain ſpaces which, ſurrounded by high mountains, preſent only rocks and hills of much leſs ſize, by which they are interſected.

We advanced into this pretended plain, having in front the mountains ſaid to be the retreat of the Houzouanas. They were only about five or ſix leagues diſtant, and appeared

to

to me to extend from ſouth to north farther than the eye could reach. I was unwilling, however, to entangle myſelf among them at hazard.

On the other hand, it was impoſſible for me to diſpatch ſome of my Hottentots before, according to my uſual cuſtom, to announce my approach, and to prepare the minds of the Houzouanas for my arrival. Had I made ſuch a propoſal to any of them, they would have formally refuſed me. I was loth even to put the attachment of Klaas to ſo great a trial, whatever readineſs he had hitherto ſhewn to obey me. In this embarraſſment I could depend only on myſelf, and wait the circumſtances that might ariſe to determine my conduct.

I halted, therefore, and ordered my encampment to be formed, in hopes that I ſhould diſcover, during the night, the fires lighted by the Houzouanas in their mountains. Theſe ſignals, I concluded, would point out to me the ſpots which they inhabited, and, by directing my route, prevent me from loſing my way. It was, however, neceſſary that I ſhould not be diſcovered by them, and that conſe-

quently no fires ſhould be kindled in my camp.

But this meaſure was become impracticable. On my arrival I had ſeen conſiderable herds of zebras. I had ſeen alſo other herds, ſtill more numerous, of the ſpecies of gnou, already mentioned; and I knew that ſuch a number of wild quadrupeds muſt neceſſarily attract beaſts of prey. How then could I run the riſk of paſſing a night without fires in a ſtrange country, and in all probability infeſted by lions and tigers?

Abandoning, therefore, my firſt deſign, I began to examine the neighbourhood, making ſome of my people alſo patrole around, in order to be aſſured that there were no enemies near us. I then, at the cloſe of the day, gave orders that ſeveral large fires ſhould be kindled, and that they ſhould be multiplied as much as poſſible, diſpoſing them, however, in ſuch a manner that they might enable us to diſtinguiſh, at a diſtance, if any thing dangerous ſhould appear.

To overawe the Houzouanas, in caſe any of them ſhould accidentally perceive us, I ordered a general diſcharge of muſquetry; and I took

took care from time to time to fire ſeveral ſhots during the night.

In the courſe of the night, I obſerved at a diſtance towards the ſouth a very large fire, which, by its extent, appeared to be a conflagration of dry graſs on the ſides of the mountains, and much nearer before us, to the weſt, three others, which I ſuppoſed to be ſignals. The latter ſeemed to announce that I was in the neighbourhood of a horde, either of the Houzouanas or of ſome other nation; and I conſequently reſolved, as ſoon as day ſhould appear, to advance towards the mountains.

When about to depart, I found myſelf once more retarded by the timidity of my people, who, being again ſeized with their former terror, were afraid to penetrate farther. When we quitted the horde of the Sandal-bearers, the danger had appeared only at a diſtance, in perſpective, and they had braved it; but now, when they beheld it near and magnified by imagination, it entirely damped their courage.

My patroles, my fires, and thoſe precautions for our ſafety which I had thought proper to employ during the night, had ſerved

only to augment their terror. They began to apprehend, that I wiſhed to advance even beyond the country of the Houzouanas. They accuſed Klaas of having deceived the whole company, by making them believe that my intention was to return to my camp at Orange-River, after I had viſited that nation, while all my preparations ſeemed to announce plans perfectly the reverſe; and this reaſoning was not deſtitute of probability, as I had hitherto ſaid nothing reſpecting the proximity of my return.

Such was the ſtill increaſing embarraſſment of my ſituation. The great number of perſons who were in my ſuite, their lazineſs, their puſillanimity, and their want of ſubordination, were continually raiſing up obſtacles, which ſtopped my progreſs, and thwarted my deſigns. Several times had I already formed a reſolution to diſembarraſs myſelf from them, and to continue my journey with Klaas only, and the four men for whoſe fidelity he had pledged himſelf; and I again found myſelf reduced to the neceſſity of adopting it.

Before I proceeded, however, to this extremity, I was deſirous to aſſure them myſelf of my

ſpeedy

ſpeedy return, and thus to diſcharge the promiſe made them by Klaas. I declared then that, after having viſited the Houzouanas and traverſed their mountains, I would proceed back by the ſouth-weſt, which I pointed out to them, either to the ſea or the mouth of Fiſh-River; and that then, advancing up its courſe till we found a ford at which to croſs it, I would repair to my camp at Orange-River.

Such a plan was calculated to excite alarm, by the long winding circuit which it announced. But it calmed the ſimple perſonages I had to deal with, who had no idea of its extent, and who, accuſtomed to ſee the ſun riſe and ſet every day without reflecting on his progreſs, and without thinking of to-morrow, knew nothing of this weſtern route, and ſaw in it only the means of returning.

My words, indeed, were not able to rouſe their depreſſed courage; but they brought back to their hearts the illuſion of hope: and it was my buſineſs to take advantage of their diſpoſition to accompliſh my views. When I gave the ſignal for our departure, every thing was in motion in my camp as uſual;

but no one ſhewed that ardour of obedience which half enſures ſucceſs. My people followed me, it is true, and this is all I can ſay; but I foreſaw, from the ſlowneſs of their motions, that it would be difficult to prolong the deluſion I had created.

I had no hopes of meeting with good water, till I ſhould reach the bottom of the mountains; but my people, in their terror, wandered ſo often from our route, in order to gain time and retard the moment of our arrival, that they happened to find ſome. I was obliged, therefore, to halt and encamp near it, though we had travelled as yet only four leagues.

During the night, we obſerved the ſame fires as we had ſeen the evening before; and at break of day I reſolved to go out myſelf on diſcovery, carrying with me a few preſents.

On this occaſion I did not take even Klaas along with me: he was become too neceſſary in my camp; and I left him behind me that, in caſe of alarm, he might keep together and encourage my people: but I was accompanied by four men who voluntarily offered their ſervices, and who, like myſelf, were completely armed.

At firſt I directed my courſe, as much as the ravines and defiles would permit, towards the place where we had obſerved the fires. Having arrived with great caution at the bottom of the mountains, I found it neceſſary to aſcend in a northern direction, as I perceived that the windings had made us deſcend too low.

The ſpace traverſed by theſe circuitous marches preſented only to my view, rocks piled one upon another, and crowned with peaks ſtill more elevated. The aſpect of them was truly hideous; and, but for ſome miſerable and ſtunted ſhrubs which here and there diſplayed their melancholy vegetation, I ſhould have beheld nothing but the dreary picture of dead and inanimate nature. The horror of this deſert was ſtill increaſed by the ſilence which prevailed around. We heard only at certain diſtances the ſhrill cry of ſome dama-antelopes, and the diſcordant noiſe of birds of prey, with which the ear was equally diſtreſſed.

I was apprehenſive, leſt the miſtake which had led us aſtray ſhould expoſe us to ſome diſagreeable adventure: by the happieſt chance, however, it led to the diſcovery of what

with ſo much eagerneſs and uncertainty I was ſearching for.

In traverſing the defiles, we perceived the freſh traces of human feet. They conducted us towards ſome rocks, which we clambered up; and we found there warm aſhes and a few remains of coals ſtill burning. It was evident, that fires had been kindled there during the night; and the veſtiges ſtill ſubſiſting announced to us, that the country was inhabited, and that the objects of our purſuit could be at no great diſtance.

Notwithſtanding all the precautions we had hitherto taken, this diſcovery induced us to double our attention. In ſhort, after marching ſome time, we arrived at a rivulet which iſſued from the entrance of a narrow defile. On its banks ſome cows were feeding; and at the diſtance of four hundred paces farther towards the defile, ſtood a certain number of huts, the habitations of the Houzouanas.

At the moment of our arrival, none of them were abroad but the women, who, on perceiving us, ſent forth a cry of alarm. Upon this ſignal, the men came out of their huts, armed

armed with bows and arrows; and the whole troop, entering the defile, poſted themſelves on a ſmall eminence, from which they watched our conduct with ſteadineſs and aſſurance, in order to determine thereby what conduct they ſhould purſue.

At the diſtance at which I ſtood, I had no hopes of making them hear me: and, beſides, what could I ſay to people with whoſe language I was totally unacquainted? I reſolved, therefore, to employ one which I ſuppoſed they might comprehend; and I made, as did alſo my companions, every ſign of friendſhip that the circumſtances of the moment ſuggeſted. This language, however, was new to them; they ſeemed not to underſtand it; and I found myſelf reduced to the neceſſity of trying the only one likely to be intelligible, I mean that of preſents.

I advanced then towards their huts; but I found them all empty, except one in which there was a little dog. At the entrance of another lay a heap of reeds, and a few ſharpened bones, deſtined, no doubt, for making arrows. Imitating the manner of thoſe who attract domeſtic animals by placing before them

them ſome dainty, I depoſited, near the reeds, a ſmall quantity of tobacco and ſome glaſs beads, and then returned to my former ſtation.

While I was thus employed, they had removed to a greater diſtance; but, when I retired, they again drew near, and at length came to the huts, and took up the preſent I had left there.

The attention with which they examined it, and the pleaſure it ſeemed to afford them, led me to believe that, after theſe preliminaries of friendſhip, I might venture to accoſt them. I advanced therefore once more, followed by my company; but they retired in the ſame manner as before.

They removed, indeed, to a greater diſtance than at firſt; but I remarked that they ſeemed to be deliberating together, and I flattered myſelf that they would not delay to enter into a conference with me. I thought proper, therefore, to make another attempt; and taking a new preſent of tobacco and beads, I held it up to them, that they might ſee it, and advanced towards them alone.

This mode of negotiation ſucceeded. One of the men left his companions, and, approaching

ing

ing me, ſtopped at the diſtance of a hundred paces to aſk who I was, and what I wanted. I remarked with ſurpriſe, that this man was black, while the reſt of the horde, both men and women, were much leſs ſo than even the Hottentots. But, what aſtoniſhed me ſtill more was to hear him addreſs me in the Hottentot language. I replied in the ſame language, that I was a traveller who wiſhed to be acquainted with the country he inhabited, and was deſirous, if poſſible, to find friends in it.

He then came up to me; and my four attendants, having advanced alſo, were as much aſtoniſhed as I was to ſee a perſon of their own nation. They entered into converſation with him, aſſured him of the truth of what I had ſaid, and gained ſo entirely his confidence, that he immediately made a ſign to his companions to join him.

The women, more miſtruſtful and circumſpect, remained in groups near the huts, waiting for the reſult of the conference, and watching us with an eye of curioſity. The men all flocked around us. I diſtributed among them the tobacco and beads which I had ſhewn them; and theſe wolves, who had been painted

painted to me as ſo ferocious, ſeemed to be as harmleſs as lambs.

I had, however, no ſooner rendered them tractable, than I was obliged to leave them. My march had taken up a great deal of my time, the day was far advanced, and I was apprehenſive that, if I remained any longer, my abſence might alarm my people; or that I ſhould expoſe myſelf to the hazard of loſing my way during the night, in a country with which I was totally unacquainted.

I told the Houzouanas, therefore, that I would return next morning, and encamp on the banks of their rivulet. I again aſſured them, that they would find in me a friend always ready to oblige and to defend them. I engaged that they ſhould experience from my people neither inſult nor injury; but I declared, at the ſame time, that, if they gave me the leaſt cauſe of complaint, I would employ againſt them all my reſources, and in that caſe they would find my ſtrength far ſuperior to theirs.

I employed the Hottentot as an interpreter to communicate to them theſe ſentiments; and through the ſame medium I received a

very ſatisfactory anſwer. I obſerved that this man, beſides the Hottentot language, ſpoke alſo pretty good Dutch. He offered very readily to ſerve me as guide to my camp, to paſs the night there, and to return with me next morning to the horde. He was overjoyed to find countrymen with whom he could converſe in his maternal tongue; and I was equally glad to find in him a confidence which contributed to ſtrengthen mine. I accepted his offer, therefore, with gratitude, and we immediately ſet out.

My readers will not doubt, that my firſt care on the road was to aſk him, by what adventure he had been tranſplanted among the Houzouanas. He informed me, that he was born in the neighbourhood of the Camis, and had lived ſeveral years ſubject to the company; but, that, having been treated in various inſtances with injuſtice, he had deſerted with a negro ſlave belonging to the ſame maſter, and, after wandering about for a long time, had at laſt ſought an aſylum and protection among the Houzouanas. The negro had died from the effect of a poiſoned arrow, by which he was wounded in a ſkirmiſh the horde had been engaged

in with a ſtrange tribe. Being thus deprived of his companion, he continued to live with his protectors, and by his courage he was become in a manner their chief.

I excuſed his deſertion; it appeared to me lawful and right; but I could not comprehend why he had preferred a reſidence among banditti, whoſe profeſſion was robbery and murder. Having, ſomewhat mildly, reproached him on this account, he addreſſed me as follows:

"The Houzouanas are by no means what "you ſuppoſe them to be, murderers by pro- "feſſion. If they ſometimes ſhed blood, it is "not from a thirſt of carnage, but to make "juſt repriſals that they take up arms. At- "tacked and perſecuted by ſurrounding na- "tions, they have found themſelves reduced to "the neceſſity of flying to inacceſſible places "among the barren mountains, where no "other people could exiſt.

"If they find antelopes and damans to kill; "if the nymphs of ants are abundant; or if "their good fortune brings them plenty of lo- "cuſts, they remain within the precincts of "their rocks; but, if the proviſions neceſſary

"to

" to ſubſiſtence fail, the nations in their neigh-
" bourhood muſt ſuffer. From the ſummits of
" their mountains, they ſurvey at a diſtance the
" countries around; and, if they obſerve cat-
" tle, they make an incurſion to carry them off,
" or ſlaughter them upon the ſpot, according
" to circumſtances; but though they rob they
" never kill, except to defend their lives, or
" by way of retaliation to revenge an ancient
" injury.

" It happens ſometimes, however, that after
" very fatiguing expeditions they return with-
" out booty; either becauſe the objects of their
" attack have diſappeared, or becauſe they
" have been repulſed and beaten. In ſuch caſes,
" the women, exaſperated by hunger and the
" lamentation of their children crying for food,
" become almoſt furious with paſſion. Re-
" proaches, inſult, and threats, are employed;
" they wiſh to ſeparate from ſuch daſtardly
" men, to quit huſbands deſtitute of courage,
" and to ſeek others who will be more anxious
" to procure proviſion for them and their chil-
" dren. In ſhort, having exhauſted whatever
" rage or deſpair can ſuggeſt, they pull off
" their ſmall apron of modeſty, and beat their

" huſbands

" huſbands about the head with it till their " arms are weary of the exerciſe.

" Of all the affronts which they can offer, " this is the moſt inſulting. Unable to with- " ſtand it, the men in their turn become furi- " ous. They put on their war-cap, a ſort of " helmet made with the ſkin that covers the " neck of the hyæna, the long hair of which " forms a creſt that floats over the head, and, " ſetting out like madmen, never return till " they have ſuccceded in carrying off ſome " cattle.

" When they come back, their wives go to " meet them, and extol their courage amidſt " the fondeſt careſſes. In a word, nothing is " then thought of but mirth and jollity; and, " till ſimilar ſcenes are recalled by ſimilar wants, " paſt evils are forgotten."

Such was the ſubſtance of the details by which my guide endeavoured to juſtify the conduct of the Houzouanas—a conduct rendered neceſſary by want, and ſufficiently authoriſed by their quality of ſavages. With our laws, civilization, manners, and the prejudices we thence imbibe, we conſider it as ſomething monſtrous to find, in the ſavage ſtate, hordes

of

of free-booters, who give themſelves up to continual rapine, to war and its concomitant dangers, in order to avoid hunger and find the means of appeaſing it. But which is, in reality, the greateſt ſavage—he who has lands and flocks, who fixes himſelf to one ſpot, who is acquainted with barter and ſubſiſts by the practice of commerce; or he who truſts merely to his ſtrength, and waits for the moment of need, before he thinks of procuring what he may have occaſion for? Laws, civilization, and morals, muſt undoubtedly have the preference; but the evils which they often bring in their train infinitely diminiſh, in my eyes, the misfortune of inhabiting a deſert and of being thereby ignorant of them.

When my Hottentot arrived at the camp, his preſence occaſioned a ſort of ſtupor. Had he fallen from the clouds, he could not, in my opinion, have produced more aſtoniſhment. He was ſoon ſurrounded by my people, each wiſhing to know by what ſingular adventures he had got to ſuch a diſtance from his native country. So highly was their curioſity excited that they never quitted him; and, after they had given him ſome refreſhment, they em-

ployed the remainder of the time till the moment of our departure, without ſuffering him to reſt during the night even, in putting queſtions to him and hearing his replies.

Next morning I proceeded, as I had announced, to pitch my tent on the banks of the rivulet. In my way thither, I ſtill obſerved that ſaline ſubſtance of which I have already ſpoken; but on the mountain it no longer exiſted, and I could diſcover no traces of it.

The return of the Hottentot freed the Houzouanas from their fear; and the accounts which he gave of my behaviour inſpired them with the utmoſt confidence. Scarcely had I arranged my camp, when they all came in a friendly manner to viſit me. You would have ſuppoſed that we had been long united by reciprocal ſentiments of fraternity; but it was not thus with my people. The name Houzouana had ſtruck their minds with ſo much dread, their prejudices were ſo deeply rooted, that they could not look at them without a panic; and, till the moment of our departure, they continued to behold them with the ſame horror.

What, during my firſt journey, had been the fear

fear they entertained of the Caffres, ſuch in my ſecond was that inſpired by the Houzouanas; and I had no more hope of curing it in the preſent than in the former inſtance. The ſavage, ſurrounded by enemies and dangers, muſt neceſſarily be miſtruſtful and ſuſpicious. If, among the enemies he has to dread, there are ſome who are truly formidable, his miſtruſt is converted into terror. The name alone of theſe will make him tremble; he gives credit to the moſt improbable tales and the moſt ridiculous fables that may be told reſpecting them; and, being thus previouſly ſubjected by his timidity, he becomes an eaſy conqueſt. The firſt ſucceſsful expedition is ſufficient to eſtabliſh the empire of one horde over all the reſt. Such has been the fortune of the Houzouanas; their name is tranſmitted with terror from mouth to mouth; their renown is conveyed from diſtrict to diſtrict, even to the Cape, where the moſt abſurd relations are propagated concerning them. Their wandering life gives to theſe relations additional credit; the impoſſibility of knowing them doubles, in the eyes of the other ſavages, their real ſtrength; and they are believed to be numerous, becauſe

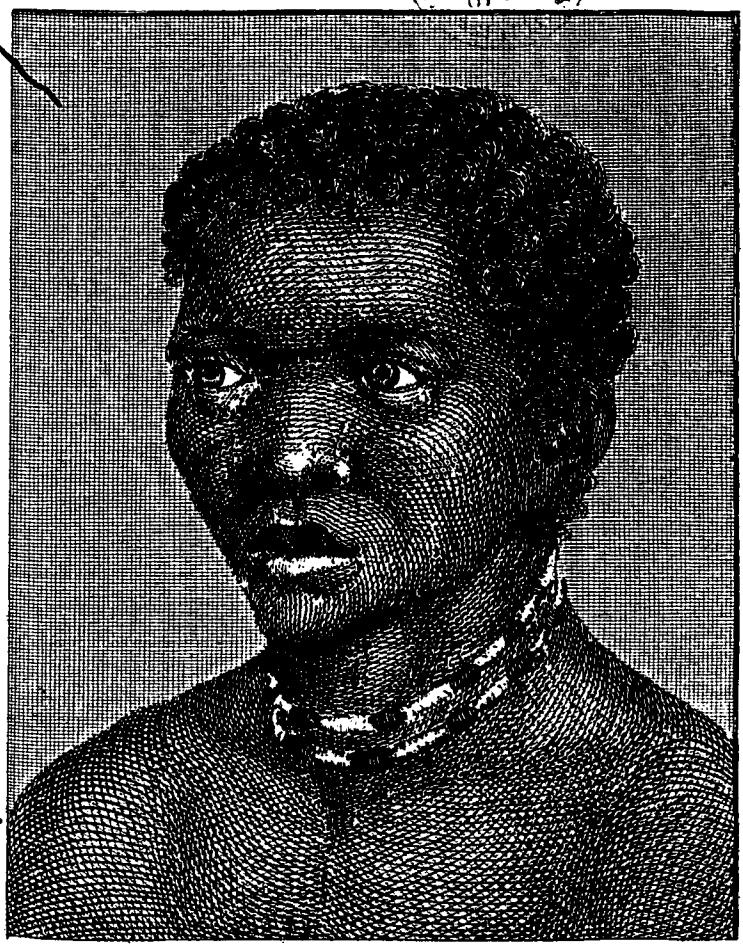
they are ſeen always active, and take their enemies by ſurpriſe.

Their horde, very inconſiderable of itſelf, was ſtill more ſo at this time, by the abſence of a part of thoſe who compoſed it. They had gone out, as they term it, to procure proviſion; and there remained in the kraal twenty-ſeven men only, ſeven women, and a few children. Theſe waited for the return of their companions, in order to quit their eſtabliſhment, and repair in a body, by a ſouth-weſt route, towards the mouth of Orange-River. Men, whoſe mode of life ſubjects them to the continual apprehenſion of being attacked, or who are frequently obliged to make diſtant excurſions, cannot long inhabit the ſame ſpot. It was only in the courſe of their paſſing it, that they had ſettled near the rivulet; and it was a fortunate circumſtance for me that I fell in with them.

The Houzouanas are of low ſtature; and a perſon five feet four inches in height is accounted among them very tall; but in their little bodies, perfectly well proportioned, are united, with ſurpriſing ſtrength and agility, a certain air of aſſurance, boldneſs, and haughtineſs,

HOUZOUANA MAN.

LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY



HEAD OF A HOUZOUANA MAN.

tineſs, which awes the beholder, and with which I was greatly pleaſed. Of all the ſavage races, I have ſeen none that appeared to be endowed with ſo active a mind, and ſo hardy a conſtitution.

Their head, though it exhibits the principal characteriſtics of that of the Hottentot, is, however, rounder towards the chin. They are alſo not ſo black in complexion; but have the lead colour of the Malays, diſtinguiſhed at the Cape by the name of *bouguinée*. Their hair, more woolly, is ſo ſhort that I imagined at firſt their heads to have been ſhaved. The noſe too is ſtill flatter than that of the Hottentots; or, rather, they ſeem altogether deſtitute of a noſe; what they have conſiſting only of two broad noſtrils which project at moſt but five or ſix lines. Accordingly, mine being the only one in the company formed after the European manner, I appeared in their eyes as a being disfigured by nature. They could not be reconciled to this difference, which they conſidered as a monſtrous deformity; and, during the firſt days of my reſidence among them, I ſaw their eyes continually fixed on my coun-

tenance, with an air of aſtoniſhment truly laughable.

From this conformation of the noſe, a Houzouana, when ſeen in profile, is the reverſe of handſome, and conſiderably reſembles an ape. When beheld in front, he preſents, on the firſt view, an extraordinary appearance, as half the face ſeems to be fore-head. The features, however, are ſo expreſſive, and the eyes ſo large and lively, that, notwithſtanding this ſingularity of look, the countenance is tolerably agreeable.

As the heat of the climate in which he lives renders clothing unneceſſary, he continues during the whole year almoſt entirely naked, having no other covering than a very ſmall jackal-ſkin faſtened round his loins by two thongs, the extremities of which hang down to his knees. Hardened by this conſtant habit of nakedneſs, he becomes ſo inſenſible to the variations of the atmoſphere, that, when he removes from the burning ſands of the level country to the ſnow and hoar-froſt of his mountains, he ſeems indifferent to and not even to feel the cold.

His

His hut in no-wiſe reſembles that of the Hottentot. It appears as if cut vertically through the middle; ſo that the hut of a Hottentot would make two of thoſe of the Houzouanas. During their emigrations, they leave them ſtanding, in order that, if any other horde of the ſame nation paſs that way, they may make uſe of them. When on a journey, they have nothing to repoſe on but a mat ſuſpended from two ſticks, and placed in an inclined poſition. They often even ſleep on the bare ground. A projecting rock is then ſufficient to ſhelter them; for every thing is ſuited to a people whoſe conſtitutions are proof againſt the ſevereſt fatigue. If, however, they ſtop any where to ſojourn for a while, and find materials proper for conſtructing huts, they then form a kraal; but they abandon it on their departure, as is the caſe with all the huts which they erect.

This cuſtom of labouring for others of their tribe announces a ſocial character and a benevolent diſpoſition. They are, indeed, not only affectionate huſbands and good fathers, but excellent companions. When they inhabit

a kraal, there is no ſuch thing among them as private property; whatever they poſſeſs is in common. If two hordes of the ſame nation meet, the reception is on both ſides friendly; they afford each other mutual protection, and confer reciprocal obligations. In ſhort, they treat one another as brethren, though perhaps they are perfect ſtrangers, and have never ſeen each other before.

Active and nimble by nature, the Houzouana conſiders it as amuſement to climb mountains and the moſt elevated peaks; and their ſkill in this reſpect was very advantageous to me. The rivulet near which I encamped had a coppery taſte and a nauſeous ſmell, which rendered it impoſſible for me to drink the water. My cattle, accuſtomed to the bad water of the country, were ſatisfied with it: but I was afraid that it might injure my people; and I would, on that account, not permit them to uſe it. The Houzouanas had no milk to give me, as they poſſeſſed only a few wretched cows which they had plundered. Having aſked them if they knew of any good ſpring in the neighbourhood, to which

which I could ſend my company to procure a ſupply of water, they ſet out themſelves in an inſtant, without making me a reply, clambered up their mountains, and in leſs than two hours brought back all my leather bottles and veſſels full of excellent water.

During the whole time of my reſidence on the rivulet, they rendered me the ſame ſervice, uniformly diſplaying the ſame zeal and the ſame readineſs. One of theſe expeditions would have employed my Hottentots a whole day.

When on a journey, ſcarcity of water gives them no uneaſineſs, even in the middle of a deſert. By a particular art they can diſcover water that is concealed in the bowels of the earth; and their inſtinct, in this point, is even ſuperior to that of the other Africans. Animals, in like caſes of diſtreſs, find water alſo; but it is only by the ſmell. There muſt be a current of air to convey to them the exhalation which riſes from it; and conſequently they muſt be to the windward. While I reſided in the deſert, during my firſt journey, my ſavages had ſhown more than once the ſame faculty; and I myſelf acquired it alſo from their inſtruction, as I have mentioned in my narrative.

The

The Houzouana, more expert, employs only his ſight. He throws himſelf flat on the ground, takes a diſtant view, and, if the ſpace which he traverſes with his eye conceals any ſubterranean ſpring, he riſes and points with his finger to the ſpot where it is to be found. The only thing by which he diſcovers it is that ethereal and ſubtile exhalation which evaporates from every current of water, when not ſunk to too great a depth.

With regard to pools and other collections formed by the rain, as their evaporation is more ſenſible, they are diſcoverable even when hid by an eminence or a hill; and the vapour of ſtreams, ſuch as rivers or rivulets, being ſtill more abundant, is ſo diſtinctly marked by it, that their courſe and even all their ſinuoſities may be traced.

I endeavoured to learn this art of the Houzouanas, during the time I reſided amongſt them. I followed their example, and practiſed their leſſons; and was at length able to make ſimilar diſcoveries, and with as much certainty. My talent, however, was far from being ſo extenſive as theirs; for, owing either to the natural weakneſs of my ſight or the want of experience,

perience, I could diſtinguiſh water at no greater diſtance than three hundred paces, while they could perceive it at a diſtance much more conſiderable.

The only arms of the Houzouanas are bows and arrows. The arrows, which are very ſhort, are carried on the ſhoulder in a quiver, about eighteen inches in length, and four in diameter, made of the bark of the aloe, and covered with the ſkin of a large ſpecies of lizard, which theſe wanderers find in all their rivers, particularly on the banks of Orange and Fiſh-River.

Obliged to maintain a numerous troop, and being deſirous that the whole horde ſhould participate in my game, of which I procured abundance, I went out daily to the chace, always accompanied by a great number of the Houzouanas. If I hunted in the mountains, I climbed the rocks with them. In the plain I uſed one of my horſes; but, whether they followed me or were employed in driving towards me the zebras and antelopes, they ſhowed themſelves indefatigable; and, however faſt I rode, I always found them keep pace with me.

My

My people, prejudiced againſt this nation, were filled with alarm whenever they ſaw me thus occupied. Every report of my gun made them tremble. They continually imagined that the Houzouanas were in the act of aſſaſſinating me, and that they ſhould afterwards experience themſelves the ſame fate; and they never beheld me return to my camp without teſtifying their joy, conſidering me as a man eſcaped from death.

For myſelf, being daily employed in rendering them ſervices, and ſeeing theſe ſavages, on their part, ever ready to oblige me, I laughed at ſuch vain terrors. In my way of judging, I had nothing to apprehend from a people who gained ſo much by my preſence, and who would, conſequently, have been conſiderable loſers by my death.

During the long excurſions which we made together, they in no inſtance belied their character. In many reſpects they appeared to reſemble the Arabs, who, being alſo wanderers, and like them brave and addicted to rapine, adhere with unalterable fidelity to their engagements, and defend, even to the laſt drop of their blood, the traveller who civilly purchaſes

chaſes their ſervices, and puts himſelf under their protection.

If my plan of traverſing from ſouth to north the whole of Africa was at all practicable, I repeat it, it could have been accompliſhed only with the Houzouanas. I am convinced that fifty men of this temperate, brave, and indefatigable nation would have been ſufficient to enable me to carry it into execution; and I ſhall always regret that I became acquainted with them too late for the trial, and at a period when numberleſs misfortunes had compelled me, for a time at leaſt, to renounce the idea.

With whatever confidence, however, their fidelity had inſpired me, I did not neglect the precautions dictated by prudence. I never truſted myſelf with them beyond the precincts of my camp, unleſs when well armed. I will even confeſs that, at firſt, I made my people keep watch; that I had conſtantly a dog in my tent during the night; and that my fire-arms were always well loaded. But at the ſame time I muſt alſo acknowledge that, in taking theſe precautions, I had not ſo much in view the Houzouanas of the horde, as the reſt of their nation, who, not being acquainted,

and

and having contracted no alliance with me, might diſcover my fires, and think themſelves authoriſed to take me by ſurpriſe, and attack me in the night, after the manner of thoſe free-booters known in general by the name of Boſhmen.

My adventures have given me already many opportunities of ſpeaking of theſe Boſhmen. I have before ſaid, that the people at the Cape comprehend under this general appellation every man, of whatever nation or colour, who, deſerting, retires to the foreſts or the mountains, there to aſſociate with other fugitives, live with them under ſuch laws as a band of robbers may be ſuppoſed to form, and ſubſiſt by rapine, without even ſparing ſimilar aſſociations of his fellows and equals.

The Houzouanas, being known only by their incurſions and plundering, are in the colonies often confounded with the Boſhmen, and diſtinguiſhed by the ſame appellation. Sometimes, however, from their tawny colour, they are called Chineſe Hottentots; and, by means of this double denomination, ill-informed travellers may eaſily be led into an error, of which the conſequence muſt be, that

their narratives will be replete with abſurdity and falſehoods.

Their real name, and the only one which they give themſelves, is that of Houzouana; and they have nothing in common with the Boſhmen, who are not a diſtinct people, but a mere collection of fugitives and free-booters. The Houzouanas form no alliances but among themſelves. Being almoſt always at war with the ſurrounding nations, they never mix with them; and, if they conſent at any time to admit a ſtranger into their hordes, it is only after a long acquaintance, a ſort of apprenticeſhip, during which he has given proofs of his fidelity, and eſtabliſhed his courage. The Hottentot whom I found there had ſubmitted to this trial, and from the manner in which he had acquitted himſelf was held in the higheſt eſtimation.

Though the Houzouanas are wanderers in their country, and ſpend the greater part of the year in emigrations and diſtant excurſions, they inhabit an immenſe diſtrict, of which, indeed, they are almoſt the ſole inhabitants, and from which, in my opinion, no nation would be able to expel them. It forms that part of

Africa

Africa which, in a direction from eaſt to weſt, extends from Caffraria to the country of the Greater Nimiquas. With regard to its breadth, from ſouth to north, I am ignorant of its extent; but I believe it to be very conſiderable; not only becauſe an immenſe territory is neceſſary to ſo wandering a people, but alſo becauſe I have reaſon to think the individuals of this nation to be very numerous.

It is ſuppoſed at the Cape that their population is ſmall; and the reaſon of this opinion is, that when they emigrate to the weſtern coaſts, whether for the purpoſe of ſubſiſting there for a time or to plunder, they are never ſeen in large bodies. But with theſe people this is only a ſtratagem. Afraid of being attacked, were their number known, they conceal their march as much as poſſible. They purſue their courſe through the narroweſt defiles, or over the tops of mountains; and frequently even they travel only by night. This cauſes them to be the more dreaded; and it is often imagined that they are already in the neighbourhood, when they are a hundred or perhaps two hundred leagues diſtant.

I am inclined to believe that the Houzou-

nas are the original ſtem of the various nations inhabiting at preſent the ſouthern part of Africa, and that from them all the tribes of the eaſtern and weſtern Hottentots are deſcended. Proofs of this, I think, may be perceived in their features, and in that clapping noiſe of the tongue when they ſpeak, which in them is much more ſtriking.

Theſe, however, are vague concluſions, inſufficient to eſtabliſh the fact in queſtion, which requires more deciſive teſtimonies. The people themſelves know nothing of their origin. In vain did I ſeveral times interrogate them on the ſubject; they always replied that they inhabited the ſame country which had been inhabited by their anceſtors; and this was all the ſatisfaction I could obtain. It was not till my return to the Cape that I received any information concerning them, which was from a few old planters reſiding in the eaſtern part of the colony; and though I conſider their accounts only as ancient traditions, the veracity of which I dare not warrant, I ſhall here lay them before my readers.

When the Europeans came to eſtabliſh themſelves at the Cape, the Houzouanas, they ſaid,

inhabited the country of Camdebo, the ſnowy mountains, and the diſtrict that ſeparates theſe mountains from Caffraria. Become neighbours to the colony, in conſequence of its extending itſelf towards them, they at firſt lived on peaceable terms with the planters; and, as they diſplayed more intelligence and greater activity than the Hottentots, they were even employed in preference to aſſiſt in cultivating the land and in forming the ſettlement. This good underſtanding and harmony were, however, ſoon interrupted by that multitude of lawleſs banditti ſent from Holland to people the country.

Theſe worthleſs profligates wiſhed to enjoy the fruits of the land without the trouble of tilling it. Educated, beſides, with all the prejudices of the whites, they imagined that men of a different colour were born only to be their ſlaves. They accordingly ſubjected them to bondage, condemned them to the moſt laborious ſervices, and repaid theſe ſervices with harſh and ſevere treatment. The Houzouánas, incenſed at ſuch arbitrary and tyrannical conduct, refuſed any longer to work for them, and retired to the deſiles of their mountains. The

planters

planters took up arms and purſued them; they maſſacred them without pity, and ſeized on their cattle and their country. Thoſe who eſcaped their atrocities betook themſelves to flight, and removed to the land which they now occupy; but, on quitting their former poſſeſſions, they ſwore, in their own name and that of their poſterity, to exterminate theſe European monſters, to be revenged againſt whom they had ſo many incitements. And thus, if tradition be true, was a peaceful and induſtrious nation rendered warlike, vindictive, and ferocious.

This hatred, ſo juſt in its principle, has been perpetuated from generation to generation, though the Houzouanas of the preſent day are ignorant of the original cauſe of it. Bred up with an invincible averſion to the planters, they know only that they are animated to plunder and deſtroy them; but it is only by a vague ſentiment of deteſtation, with the ſource of which they are unacquainted; and which happily, in rendering them cruel towards the planters, does not prevent them from being good, kind, and humane, towards each other.

What I have ſaid reſpecting the moral and

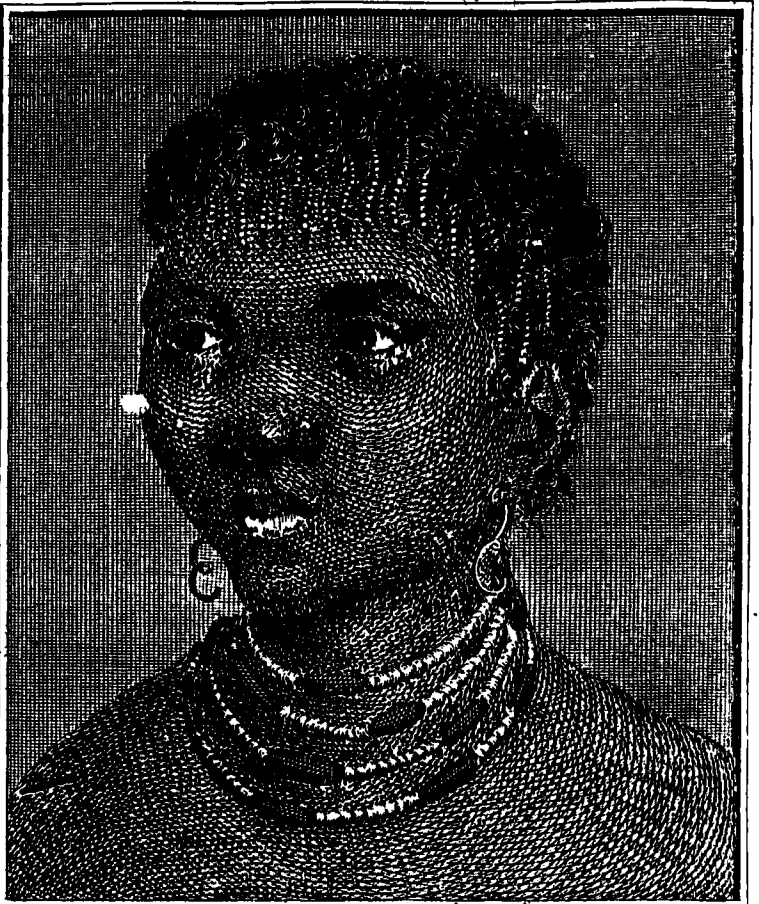
phyſical qualities of the Houzouanas proves, in my opinion, that at preſent they form a diſtinct nation; but what ſingularly excited my aſtoniſhment was the enormous natural rump of the women, which, like the artificial ones adapted ſome years ago by the French ladies, diſtinguiſhes them from every other people, ſavage or poliſhed, I have ever known.

I have ſeveral times, in my former travels, had occaſion to remark, that, among the female Hottentots in general, as they advance in age, the inferior part of the back ſwells out, and acquires a ſize which greatly exceeds the proportion it bore in infancy with the other parts of the body. The Houzouana women, having in their figure ſome reſemblance to the Hottentots, and appearing, therefore, to be of the ſame race, one might be induced to believe that their projection behind is only the Hottentot rump more ſwelled and extended. I obſerved, however, that among the former this ſingularity was an excreſcence of ſlow growth, and in ſome meaſure an infirmity of old age; whereas among the latter it is a natural deformity, an original characteriſtic of their race.

Reflect-

HOUZOUANA WOMAN.

ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY
BOMBAY
BRANCH



HEAD OF A HOUZOUANA WOMAN.

Reflecting on the cauſe of this phenomenon, I aſcribed it at firſt to an extraordinary curvature of the ſpine, or to a prominence of the lower vertebræ and os ſacrum, which, projecting forwards, rendered that part more protuberant, and threw the haunches out of their uſual poſition; but very deciſive obſervations ſoon convinced me of the contrary. The bones which form the ſkeleton of the reins were in their natural ſituation; none of the vertebræ were deranged; and this extended rump is only a fat and fleſhy maſs, which, upon every movement of the body, exhibits a moſt remarkable quivering and undulation.

I ſaw a girl, three years old, entirely naked, as indeed are all the children of the ſavages at that age, playing and jumping before me for ſeveral hours. I at firſt pitied her condition, in being loaded with ſo cumbrous a burden, which I thought muſt obſtruct her movements; but I did not perceive that, on this account, ſhe was the leſs at her eaſe, or at all reſtricted in her freedom. In amuſing herſelf with a young brother, ſhe would ſometimes walk along as if ſhe had been counting her ſteps; then ſuddenly ſtopping, and ſtamping her foot againſt the

ground, would give a ſhock to her body, which made her poſteriors quiver like a lump of ſhaking jelly. The little urchin would endeavour to imitate her; but not being able, as he had not the ſame conſiguration behind, which is peculiar to the females, he would burſt into a paſſion, while his ſiſter laughed heartily at his diſappointment.

The Houzouana mothers wear on their reins, like our miners, a ſkin which covers this protuberance of the poſteriors; but which, being thin and pliable, yields to the quivering of the fleſh, and becomes agitated in the ſame manner. When on a journey, or when they have children too young to follow them, they place them upon their rump. I ſaw one of theſe women run in this manner with a child, about three years of age, that ſtood erect on its feet at her back, like a foot-boy behind a carriage.

With this monſtrous deformity, who would believe that the Houzouana women have a hand and foot remarkably delicate; that their arms are beautifully formed; and that theſe parts of their body are abſolutely perfect? Obliged to follow their huſbands in their long excurſions, they

wear

wear, like them, ſandals; like them, have their heads covered with a cap formed of the ſkin of a jackal; and, like them alſo, go almoſt entirely naked, wearing before only a very ſmall apron of modeſty, and on their loins the piece of leather of which I have before ſpoken. At their ſide is a box made of wood, ivory, or tortoiſe-ſhell, to hold the greaſe with which they *boughou* and beſmear themſelves, and the tail of ſome quadruped, fixed to the end of a ſtick, with which they wipe their body and face when they perſpire. They have no beads nor any ornament whatever, unleſs we conſider as ornaments garters and bracelets of raw leather.

As a fondneſs for dreſs and a deſire of pleaſing are, however, natural to the ſex, the Houzouana women no ſooner ſaw the beads and toys with which thoſe in my troop were ornamented than they expreſſed a deſire to have ſome alſo. I diſtributed, therefore, a few to each of them; and from that moment they never ceaſed to wear them, and with much apparent ſatisfaction.

I have ſaid that they boughou and beſmear themſelves with greaſe. This cuſtom is com-

mon to the men as well as to the women. Like the wreſtlers and pugiliſts of antiquity, they think it neceſſary to preſerve the pliability of their limbs. For this operation, they employ the fat of ſuch animals as they kill in the chace; and if that fail them, they have recourſe to the oil which exudes from the nymphs of ants when they broil them for nouriſhment, and which they collect and preſerve for the purpoſe. Their bodies, when anointed with this oil, have a very ſtrong ſmell; but it is not diſagreeable.

On the third day of my encampment near the horde, five men and two women arrived from an excurſion, bringing with them two live ſheep. The fruits of their depredations had conſiſted of three of theſe animals; but the third eſcaped by the way and was loſt.

They were driving the ſheep before them, when, on approaching the kraal, they ſuddenly perceived my camp. The ſight of ſo many ſtrangers, of whom they had no knowledge, alarmed them. They inſtantly abandoned their booty, and retired with precipitation; but, ſeeing their companions in a ſtate of ſafety, which ſeemed to announce that we were on

good terms with each other, they again advanced, and in leſs than an hour were as familiar as the reſt.

As I intended to make an excurſion towards the north north-weſt, for the purpoſe of diſcovering rare birds or new hordes, I communicated my deſign to the Houzouanas, who readily offered to accompany me, but confeſſed at the ſame time that, having never penetrated far into that part of the country, they could give me no information reſpecting it.

Being ignorant what time this excurſion might require, and with what difficulties it might be attended, I thought it prudent that ſome of my own people ſhould be of the party. The journey, however, was extremely fatiguing, and unproductive of the ſmalleſt diſcovery.

On my return, the Houzouanas propoſed another in the oppoſite quarter. To accompliſh this ſecond excurſion, it would be neceſſary to traverſe the mountains for three whole days, after which I ſhould find nations with whom they were at peace, and who were of the Kabobiqua race; but I muſt have left my horſes and cattle behind me, as the roads, they

they ſaid, were impaſſable for theſe animals. Though this plan was agreeable in certain points of view, it diſpleaſed me in others. Happily, however, they enabled me to form another, which I determined to execute.

I have already remarked, that it was by a fortunate chance that I fell in with them. They were then on their way to the eaſtern coaſts, and had halted on the banks of the rivulet only to wait for ſome of their parties, who had detached themſelves from the general body, in order to go a-marauding in the plains. Their route towards the eaſt was little different from that which I propoſed to take; and I ſaw that, by marching along with them or engaging them to attend me, I ſhould obtain truſty guides as well as able defenders. It was poſſible that I might meet with bodies of Houzouanas, with whom, were none of theſe people in my company, I might be obliged to combat. United to them, ſhould I even be attacked by a whole nation, I had nothing to fear.

I did not, therefore, heſitate a moment; and, to eſcort me as far as Fiſh-River, I offered them four milch-cows. To people who often

expoſe

expoſe their lives for a ſingle ſheep, this was a temptation not to be reſiſted. Accordingly they requeſted only that I would allow them four or five days to collect their friends—to which I readily conſented.

In the evening they diſperſed themſelves over the mountain, climbing to the higheſt ſummits, there to kindle fires which might ſerve as ſignals to the ſcattered parties of their friends; or to obſerve thoſe which the latter might kindle in the plains. They had no doubt that, if they ſucceeded in making their fires be perceived, all the different bodies would immediately join them.

Nocturnal fires are a peculiar language underſtood and employed by almoſt all ſavage nations. None, however, have carried this art ſo far as the Houzouanas, becauſe none have ſo much need of underſtanding and bringing it to perfection. If it be neceſſary to announce a defeat or a victory, an arrival or departure, a ſucceſsful plundering expedition or the want of aſſiſtance, in a word, any intelligence whatever, they are able, either by the number of their fires or the manner in which they arrange them, to make it known in an inſtant.

They

They are even ſo ſagacious as to vary their fires from time to time, leſt their enemies ſhould become acquainted with their ſignals, and treacherouſly employ them, in their turn, to ſurpriſe them.

I am perfectly unacquainted with the principles of this language, invented with ſo much ingenuity; not having aſked them to teach me ſo much as the elements of it, becauſe I was certain they would have refuſed. All I can ſay is, that three fires kindled at the diſtance of twenty paces from each other, ſo as to form an equilateral triangle, are a ſignal for rallying; at leaſt, during the five days employed in calling together and waiting for the ſcattered detachments, they made no other.

It appears as if the marauders were at too great a diſtance to perceive their ſignals; for none of them returned. Their abſence, however, did not prevent us from ſetting out on the ſixth day. The Houzouanas left their huts ſtanding; and, to announce their departure, four men remained in the kraal, who had orders to kindle other fires, and to join us in the night, after they had lighted them.

This arrangement was highly diſpleaſing to my

my poltroons. They apprehended that the intention of my guides was to lead us into ſome ambuſh, where we ſhould all be maſſacred; and that the four men left behind were, by their ſignals, to give notice to ſome of their parties to come upon us while we were aſleep. In ſhort, there was no danger which their terrified imagination did not dread; and ſo great was their cowardice, that they durſt not venture to ſtir from my camp, even in the day time; nor would my hunters ever go out to the chace unleſs I accompanied them.

We directed our courſe acroſs the mountains in a ſtraight line towards the ſouth-eaſt, and did not halt till ten at night, in a place where we found plenty of good water in the cavities of the rocks. Towards midnight, the four men of the horde arrived; and if their preſence afforded me pleaſure, as it announced the ſcrupulous punctuality and active zeal of their nation, it was no leſs agreeable to my poltroons, whoſe ſuſpicions it in ſome meaſure allayed.

Though they now ſaw their pretended enemies before them, they were nevertheleſs ſo ſtruck that they ſtill apprehended ſome noc-

turnal

turnal treachery. I had, therefore, no need to recommend to them to be vigilant. Not one indulged himſelf in ſleep; on the contrary, they all ſpent the night in caſting their eyes every where around, palpitating if they heard the ſmalleſt noiſe, and watching with alarm the leaſt movement of the Houzouanas, who, during the whole time, were repoſing in tranquillity.

When day appeared, ſo that I could diſtinguiſh objects around me, I obſerved, with conſiderable pain, that the earth was abſolutely parched up, that it did not preſent a ſingle blade of graſs, and that my cattle muſt conſequently have remained the whole night without food.

I communicated my uneaſineſs to the Houzouanas, and aſked them how many days it would require to go in a ſtraight direction to the ſea, and whether we ſhould meet with paſturage and water on our route. Their anſwer threw me into conſternation. They informed me, that if the drought had been general, as they were aſſured, we muſt expect, by advancing in that quarter, to find, wherever we paſſed, a ſoil equally naked, and in all probability deſtitute of water.

After

After ſuch intelligence, it was impoſſible for me to proceed farther. Beſides expoſing myſelf to the hazard of loſing all my cattle, and of leaving in the deſert the greater part of my effects, I could not forget that I had every day to feed, independently of my own party, forty new mouths; and that for ſuch a multitude an abundance of large game would be requiſite. In a country that afforded neither paſturage nor water, what hopes were there of finding ſuch game, when the period of their paſſage was elapſed? The caſe was now different from what it had been in the fertile plains of Caffraria, when the body of Hottentots in my train, who were ſo intereſting and of ſo much importance to me, having plenty of every thing, increaſed the happineſs of my ſituation by the moſt agreeable relaxations and the moſt varied amuſements. Here wretchedneſs and fatigue were likely to be my conſtant companions; and, though free from the apprehenſions and terror which pervaded my whole company, I was far from beholding with the ſame eye, as in that inſtance, theſe new ſavages, aſſociated with me in my excurſions, and offering to ſhare in my fatigue. My only reſource, under the

preſent circumſtances, was to proceed to a diſtrict leſs parched; and having on this point interrogated my Houzouanas, they aſſured me, that, by following the chain of mountains, we could not fail to find both water and paſturage.

There was no longer occaſion to heſitate. I gave orders, therefore, to face about; and we directed our courſe along the edge of the mountains that bounded us on the eaſt. But the road we had to travel was ſo covered with ſtones and interſected by ravines, that we ſpent the whole day in advancing ſix leagues, and without ſo much as once halting, notwithſtanding the inſupportable heat of a ſcorching ſun, as we could find neither water nor ſhelter by the way.

I met with nothing remarkable during this day's journey, except the neſt of an oſtrich, in which was the female hatching her young. Three eggs, depoſited on the bare ground, lay before her; and ſhe was ſitting upon nine others, the young in which were in ſo advanced a ſtate as to be ready to burſt the ſhell.

The ſeparation of the eggs in this manner into two parcels, near to, but diſtant from

each

each other, is a fact I have already mentioned in my firſt travels; but the way in which I accounted for it has been contradicted. There are perſons who cannot believe that the oſtrich places eggs before her neſt, to ſerve as food for her young when they are hatched. So much foreſight in a bird, which we have hitherto thought proper to conſider as the emblem of ſtupidity, appears to them an improbable fiction. It has been ſaid, that, before the publication of my travels, no naturaliſt ever mentioned the circumſtance; which is the ſum total of all the objections they can make; and I have ſurely no need to ſhew its futility, ſince, as naturaliſts have ſpoken ſo differently on other points, what concluſion would be made ſhould I affirm, on my part, that they have publiſhed nothing but falſehoods and errors?

How many diſcoveries in natural hiſtory, controverted at firſt on account of their novelty, are now admitted as inconteſtable truths! When a traveller thought proper to ſay, that coral was not a marine production of the vegetable kingdom, but a real neſt conſtructed by inſects; and when Deliſle, on his return from

China, advanced that ambergris was produced by a whale, and gave proofs of it, were there not men, your cloſet naturaliſts, who oppoſed their aſſertions?

Let us not believe from vague report every thing indiſcriminately. Such conduct would by no means accord with the dictates of reaſon. Let us previouſly examine the credibility due to the perſon who may advance new facts, and the evidence adduced in ſupport of them; but let us not reject them merely becauſe they are new. The more we ſtudy nature, the more we ſhall diſcover circumſtances which it will be impoſſible for us to explain. But how many daily occur before our eyes, which we even never think of examining! Let thoſe writers on natural hiſtory, whoſe whole ſcientific knowledge conſiſts in reading and reaſoning from books, inform me, for example, why the ſwallow, when its neſt is deſtroyed, will begin ten or twelve times ſucceſſively to rebuild it in the ſame place, while indigenous birds abandon theirs as ſoon as it has been touched, and go elſewhere to conſtruct another.

With regard to the eggs ſet apart by the oſtrich

oſtrich for the firſt nouriſhment of her young, I can quote, in ſupport of my aſſertion, the teſtimony of a celebrated navigator, de Bougainville, who had ſailed round the globe before I even thought of viſiting Africa. Having called upon me to ſee my collection of natural hiſtory, after the publication of my firſt travels, and the converſation turning upon what I had written reſpecting the oſtrich, he told me, that my obſervation was ſtrictly correct, that he had every where met with proofs of it, and that he had refrained from being the firſt to publiſh it, from the fear that his veracity would be called in queſtion. This however is one of thoſe novelties which ought to be made known by men capable of beſtowing on them credibility; for the opinion the world has formed of a man is often indiſpenſible to the giving the colour of truth to the moſt unqueſtionable facts.

From what I have here had occaſion to ſay reſpecting the oſtrich, I flatter myſelf that I ſhall be pardoned for adding a few obſervations more upon the ſame ſubject.

It has been aſſerted by a naturaliſt to whom ſcience is much indebted, that at Senegal this

bird ſits on her eggs during the night only; and that ſhe abandons them in the day to the heat of the ſun. I do not know whether the heat at Senegal be greater than under the ſame latitude on the other ſide of the equator, nor whether the oſtriches of the former are ſuperior in inſtinct to thoſe of the latter climate. But from the Cape, as far as the twenty-ſecond degree of latitude, I have ſeen neſts; and I can aſſert, that I never found one which was not covered by a male or a female, unleſs, from the death of the oſtrich that had been ſitting on them, or ſome other particular accident, the eggs had been totally deſerted.

With regard to the number of eggs, the ſeaſon when they are laid, and the period of incubation, nothing that can be depended on is yet known: for thoſe who have traverſed Africa preſent us, on this ſubject, with contradictory evidence only, the uncertainty of which muſt neceſſarily embarraſs the naturaliſt.

What may have led travellers into an error is, that in the ſame diſtrict we ſee, at one and the ſame time, a female which has begun to lay, young oſtriches two or three months old, and others as large as the mother. All this

this preſents an idea of diſorder in the ſpecies, which proceeds from two cauſes. I ſhall ſpeak of the firſt elſewhere, as it is common to all the birds of Africa; and content myſelf at preſent with mentioning the ſecond.

Birds of the ſame ſpecies copulate generally at the ſame ſeaſon, and conſequently ought all to produce young about the ſame period. Their eggs, however, may be deſtroyed, and the mother obliged in conſequence to lay a ſecond, and even perhaps a third ſet; and it is evident that there will then be young ſcarcely hatched, while others will have attained a conſiderable ſize.

This is the caſe with the oſtrich. She generally lays ten eggs; but theſe eggs are much ſought after by the ſavages, who conſider them as dainties; and, when they diſcover them, they never fail to carry them away. The conſequence is, that the animal is retarded in laying, and that young oſtriches are reared of different ages. If a Hottentot find a neſt where incubation is not yet begun, and if he ſuppoſe that it is known to himſelf only, it becomes a treaſure, the produce of which he will reſerve for a long time.

Inſtead of removing the eggs all at once, he takes only one or two, convinced that the female, who never begins to ſit till ſhe has completed her number, will lay again. Two days after he will repeat his theft. In ſhort, if he plunder with addreſs and precaution, he may cauſe her to lay as many as fifty; and ſometimes even, when the neſt is occupied by two or three oſtriches aſſociated together, and ſitting in company, as I have ſeen and already mentioned, he may procure a ſtill greater number.

A naturaliſt unacquainted with theſe facts may eaſily be led into an error. Accordingly, when a ſavage tells him that he has taken from an oſtrich's neſt ſixty or eighty eggs, and perhaps more, he ought thus to account for the circumſtance, and not imagine that there is any great variation in the number laid by different individuals of this ſpecies. But I return to my camp.

Scarcely had we halted at the bottom of the mountains, when my Houzouanas haſtened to climb them, in order to diſcover the fires of their abſent friends, and to kindle others to inform them where they might be found. Their ſignals,

ſignals, however, were equally fruitleſs as before; but theſe active people had carried all my leather bottles with them to the top of the mountains; and, when they returned, they brought them back filled with freſh water.

On my departure from Orange-River, I had provided myſelf with a great number of theſe bottles, which I had cauſed to be made of ſheep's ſkins, in imitation of thoſe invented by my people to contain the oil of their whale. They were commonly carried by the women, either on their backs, affixed to a ſtrap, or ſuſpended between two from a ſtick which each held by one end; but the Houzouanas, from the time they formed a part of my caravan, were ſo polite as to eaſe the women of this burden; and, while they accompanied me, theſe veſſels were always carried by them.

The chain of mountains extended in a ſouthern direction. We continued our journey for two whole days along its courſe; and we every where found paſture for our cattle, and water in the rocks for ourſelves. This route, however, thwarted the deſire I had of penetrating farther to the weſt, thereby to approach the borders of the ſea.

To the weſt, before me, were other mountains, the chain of which, more conſiderable ſtill than that we had followed, loſt itſelf on the horizon, and by its direction was likely to conduct me to the ocean, where I was deſirous of ending this excurſion. My guides aſſured me that I ſhould in this, as in the preceding courſe, meet both with paſture and water. They added too, that in the mountains there were ſeveral hordes with whom they were at preſent in amity; and to convince me, by the favourable reception that would be given them by theſe hordes, that they knew how to conciliate and retain friends, they requeſted me to purſue this courſe.

From all theſe conſiderations united, I was induced to comply with their deſire. However, before I gave orders for our departure, I wiſhed to know how far we had to travel. For this purpoſe, I aſcended one of the peaks, and, eſtimating the diſtance between the two chains, I concluded that it was about twenty-four leagues. But it gave me great uneaſineſs to obſerve, that the whole plain beneath preſented ſcarcely any thing to my view but dry ſand; that it contained very little verdure, and not a ſingle tree.

With

Without provisions and leather bottles, we had for ourselves a sufficient supply for this fatiguing journey; but it was necessary that our cattle should accomplish it without perhaps either eating or drinking. Cattle in Europe, if condemned thus to fast for two days under a scorching sun, in a march of twenty-four leagues, and through a horrid desert, would undoubtedly perish; but ours, accustomed to long and frequent fatigue, were capable of supporting it. However, to prepare them by a little rest, I remained encamped two days; and employed the time in hunting excursions, in which we killed several coudou antelopes and a female elephant, which furnished us with abundance of provision.

On the day appointed, we set out early in the morning, and did not halt till nine in the evening. My cattle, as I expected, had found by the way no water, and very little grass; and, after so laborious a journey, it was necessary that they should still pass the night without food.

With regard to ourselves, the Houzouanas had been so provident as to fill all my leather bottles with water found among the rocks; but, having

having been beaten about the whole day, it was as warm as lie; and, as it had contracted too the taſte and ſmell of the ſkins in which it was confined, it ſeemed calculated to act rather as an emetic than to refreſh us and allay our thirſt.

Fortunately I had ſaved a few jars of wine and beer, which, having become ſour by the agitation and heat, formed excellent vinegar. I poured a few ſpoonfuls of it among the water which we had to drink; and its acidity, by correcting the diſagreeable taſte, rendered it a more healthful beverage.

During the night, we obſerved fires towards the ſouth-weſt. As they ſeemed to announce ſome of thoſe hordes of whom the Houzouanas had ſpoken, I gave orders, when we ſet out next morning, to proceed towards them.

This day's journey could not fail of being extremely fatiguing to animals which had not taſted drink for twenty-four hours; but to me it was more ſo than it needed to have been, becauſe, having left the caravan, in company with Klaas, to purſue ſome pale-yellow-coloured zebras we had perceived in the plain, we loſt ourſelves for a time, and wandered over a great

a great deal of ground to little purpoſe before we could recover our way.

Agreeably to the rule I had laid down of ſending a few perſons before me, when I approached a new horde, to inform them of my arrival and conciliate their friendſhip, I thought proper to obſerve the ſame practice on the preſent occaſion. It ſeemed even of importance that I ſhould chooſe, as deputies for that purpoſe, ſome of the Houzouanas, who had boaſted of being the friends and allies of all the hordes in this diſtrict. But, as they had told me they were now at peace with them, I concluded that this was not their habitual ſtate; and that, conſequently, they and their neighbours would behave to each other with reſerve. For that reaſon I was unwilling to diſpatch any of the Houzouanas. So much intimacy appeared to me ſuſpicious: not that I thought the latter capable of treachery; but I was afraid leſt the horde ſhould be prejudiced againſt me, when they found me attended by ſo many followers, and ſaw me introduced by people who were certainly more dreaded than loved.

To ſend any of my own Hottentots was impracticable. If they went alone, they could not

not have accompliſhed the object of their miſſion for want of interpreters; and if accompanied by Houzouanas, the inconvenience of a diſagreeable prepoſſeſſion ſtill ſubſiſted. While under this uncertainty, I had only one courſe to purſue: to give up all thoughts of diſpatching any one before me—which was the plan I adopted. About nine in the evening we arrived in ſight of the horde; and, without any preliminaries, I immediately encamped at the diſtance of about two hundred paces.

An arrival ſo abrupt was likely to fill them with alarm, and perhaps inſtantly to diſperſe them. But, whatever might be their fear, they had been rendered incapable of flight by a very melancholy misfortune. A great number of them had already fallen a ſacrifice to a peſtilential diſorder; and thoſe who remained were ſtill attacked by it as well as their cattle. Covered with ulcers from head to foot, they lay extended in their huts, and exhaled a cadaverous ſmell that was ſcarcely ſupportable.

This peſtilence, they ſaid, had firſt broken out in the countries towards the eaſt, where its ſpread had been attended with dreadful ravage; and it was there they had caught the infection.

A few

A few days before, ſuch of the horde as ſuppoſed themſelves in good health had retired towards the ſouth, to avoid its influence; but the diſeaſed told us they had carried the ſeeds of it along with them; and that it would probably ſhow itſelf before they had accompliſhed their journey.

I ſhall here obſerve; that this flight may ſerve to explain ſome abſurd aſſertions to be found in the works of certain ill-informed travellers. Savage nations, according to their account, when emigrating or on journeys, abandon ſuch old and infirm perſons as are not in a condition to follow them. This is a calumny founded upon an error, which the fact above related may ſerve to rectify.

The horrid ſpectacle we had before our eyes filled with much alarm my whole caravan, and, above all, my Greater Nimiquas, who, moſt ſuſceptible of terror, becauſe the moſt timid and puſillanimous of the company, had beſides ſome experience of this plague, which they had ſeen ſpread itſelf among their nation, and with the effects of which they were conſequently acquainted.

They declared to me that, if I did not alter

my

my route, they would quit me the next morning; that the fear of being attacked by the Boſhmen was nothing in compariſon of ſo horrid a death, which they conſidered as inevitable; and that, after all, it might be poſſible for them to eſcape the Boſhmen by travelling in the night.

For once, their terror appeared to me to be well founded. I was not free myſelf from apprehenſion; and I certainly had as little deſire as they to expoſe myſelf to a diſeaſe which in three days might involve us in general deſtruction.

I gave notice, therefore, that next morning at ſun-riſe I ſhould decamp; and, in the mean time, I took ſuch precautions as I conceived to be neceſſary for our preſervation; as poſting ourſelves to the windward, kindling fires around us during the night, and, above all, guarding our cattle, to prevent them from approaching thoſe of the horde, leſt they ſhould catch the infection. Next morning, having ſent ſome tobacco to the ſick, giving orders to thoſe who carried it, to depoſit it at a diſtance from the huts, and ſtrictly charging them to accept of nothing in return, I made the ſignal for

for departing; and we ſet out with a reſolution of advancing due eaſt, in order to avoid the infection, which actually prevailed in the quarter in which we had been already travelling.

We now regretted that we had, two days before, quitted the eaſtern chain of mountains, and were deſirous of returning; but it was impoſſible, without making a long journey and ſubjecting ourſelves to new and extreme fatigue, to effect it. Our good fortune, however, ſent us an abundant rain, which comforted and refreſhed my cattle.

Notwithſtanding this relief, as, beſides their burdens, they had to carry my people alſo, and as they travelled thirteen leagues without ſtopping more than an hour or two, they arrived very much exhauſted. I was even obliged to leave two of them by the way; but luckily, having been revived by the rain and a little repoſe, they followed us to the camp during the night.

Of all my attendants, the Houzouanas alone ſtill retained ſome courage and ſtrength: as to the reſt, little accuſtomed to extraordinary fatigue, and ill calculated to endure it, they were

quite worn out. They dragged themſelves along with great difficulty, and were obliged in turns to ride upon the oxen. The Greater Nimiquas, with their eyes ſunk and a dejected air, had ſcarcely ſtrength to utter a word; but, though they did not ſpeak, their ſilence every moment announced the regret they felt at having engaged to follow me. In ſhort, whoever had ſeen my caravan would have taken it for one of thoſe flying hoſpitals that uſually follow in the rear of an army.

The animals themſelves, extenuated by long faſting and long marches, ſhared in the general dejection. My horſes were lame; and, as it was impoſſible to uſe them, I had been obliged to travel on foot. I have already remarked, that ſuch was the fatigue of my oxen, that I had been forced to abandon two of them. The feet of my dogs were abſolutely ſore and covered with blood. They were not only become indifferent reſpecting the purſuit of game, but ſaw it riſe before them without ſtirring ſo much as a ſtep to follow it. I could not, as formely, place them in my waggons; for I had none. It was a truly affecting ſpectacle to ſee the limping manner in which they walked.

walked. From time to time they ſtopped to lick their feet; but this momentary relief, by ſoftening the ſkin, rendered them ſtill more painful.

The night was attended with no other event than the diſcovery of ſome fires, which we obſerved before us on the mountains, and which were productive of joy as they awakened our hopes. My Houzouanas in particular teſtified their ſatisfaction, conceiving at firſt that they were ſignals made by their companions; but having looked attentively, without diſtinguiſhing in theſe fires their own language and characters, they agreed in conſidering them as kindled by ſome neighbouring horde with whom they were unacquainted.

The ſleep and repoſe of a ſingle night were not ſufficient to reſtore ſtrength to people ſo much haraſſed as mine. Accordingly in the morning, they all complained that they were not able to ſtand upright; and I thought, for a moment, that I ſhould have been obliged to remain in the place where I had encamped. Having, however, repreſented to them that it would require only a day's journey to reach

the mountains and the horde whoſe fires we had ſeen, and promiſed that I would halt there for ſome days, to give them time to reſt themſelves, they reſumed courage and recovered the uſe of their legs.

About five in the afternoon, we arrived in the neighbourhood of the horde. My oxen and dogs, having ſcented ſome water, inſtantly quitted us, and proceeded as faſt as they could to the kraal, without its being in our power to check or recall them. Their ſmell had not deceived them. They found ſome wells; but, as they were ſhut, they could only ſnuff the vapours around without being able to quench their thirſt.

It may eaſily be imagined how great muſt have been the ſurpriſe of the horde at the appearance of all theſe animals. Their ſurpriſe, however, was converted into alarm when they beheld my whole party, and obſerved near them a large body of thoſe Houzouanas ſo much dreaded, with a white man in the midſt of them, leſs formidable perhaps, but ſtill more terrifying to a people who had never ſeen before a perſon of his colour. Aſtoniſhed and

ſtupefied

ſtupefied by the ſpectacle, they had neither the ſtrength to fly nor the aſſurance to advance towards us.

To free them from this painful ſtate, I drew near; and, without ſeeming to perceive their embarraſſment, cauſed my interpreters to aſk them if they had among them any perſons infected with the malady which had driven us from the weſtern mountains. My queſtion filled them with terror. They were acquainted by experience, as well as my Nimiquas, with its devaſtations; but at that time they were not attacked by it; and, upon receiving their anſwer, I inſtantly ordered my camp to be formed near them.

During the laſt four days, my animals had travelled more than forty leagues without taſting water or food, except once at the diſeaſed horde. I found paſturage, however, in the neighbourhood of my preſent encampment; and I propoſed, according to my promiſe, to halt ſome days in order to give time to my whole caravan to recover their ſtrength. On this account, I was deſirous of eſtabliſhing an intercourſe with the new horde and conciliating their friendſhip. This, however, appeared at

firſt to be a matter of ſome difficulty. Neither in the afternoon nor in the evening had a ſingle perſon of the kraal approached my camp; and the ſentiments which this conduct announced ſurpriſed me the more, as no ſavage nation had ever behaved towards me in the ſame manner. Were they afraid of me, of the Houzouanas, or of the infectious diſtemper prevailing in the canton from which we had come? This queſtion I cannot reſolve: but their keeping at a diſtance betrayed ſuſpicion at leaſt; and this ſuſpicion was ſo great, that, during the night, they deliberated whether they ſhould not retire to the mountains.

Klaas, who ſought every opportunity to ſerve and aſſiſt me, having gone out at break of day to make obſervations, came to communicate to me an important remark. The horde was very conſiderable; and yet he had ſeen only a ſmall number of cattle, incapable of ſupplying food to ſo many individuals. Hence he concluded that they had removed or concealed the greater part of their herds; a conjecture that appeared to be well founded; but the conduct of theſe ſavages afflicted more than it aſtoniſhed me.

Deſirous,

Deſirous, if poſſible, to put an end to it, I aſſembled the Houzouanas, preſcribed to them the conduct which I wiſhed them to obſerve towards the horde, and declared at the ſame time, that, if they gave occaſion for the ſlighteſt complaint, they would not only forfeit my friendſhip, but that I would unite with the horde to exterminate them even to the laſt man. They proteſted that they would ſtrictly adhere to what they had promiſed; and I muſt here repeat, that during the whole of their ſtay with me, they never once failed in their engagements.

Being perfectly eaſy in regard to the Houzouanas, my next buſineſs was to remove the diſtruſt of the horde; and with this view I repaired, without a ſingle attendant, inſtantly to the kraal. The confidence which this ſtep announced on my part diſſipated their fears, and preſently there was eſtabliſhed between us a perfect union. Their flocks and herds reappeared. In the evening they came to my camp with ſome milk; and they brought me even a few ſheep, for which I paid them liberally in tobacco. I bought alſo five oxen and four cows, which I immediately delivered to

the Houzouanas, thereby fulfilling the engagement into which I had entered with them. In ſhort, the whole horde came the next morning, with the utmoſt cordiality and kindneſs, to viſit me.

To ſtrengthen theſe ſentiments of fraternity, I propoſed a grand hunting party, to which every perſon ſhould be admitted without exception. We killed on this occaſion abundance of antelopes; and, in the diſtribution of the game, I gave, as will naturally be ſuppoſed, a liberal ſupply to all the inhabitants of the horde.

The reſt which my cattle enjoyed during my abode with theſe people, and the excellent paſturage which they found in the neighbourhood, ſoon reſtored them to their former condition. There was nothing, therefore, to retard my departure; and I was under the leſs uneaſineſs reſpecting my future route, as the *Boſhmen's graſs*, every where at the bottom of the mountains, was in full bloom.

Before I quitted the horde, I wiſhed to do them a farther kindneſs; and I propoſed that they ſhould enter into a treaty of peace and alliance with the Houzouanas: a treaty at which

which neither crowned heads nor ambaſſadors would aſſiſt; but which, by a pledge ſimple and patriarchal, might be maintained as inviolate, and rendered perhaps more durable, than by the pompous words humanity, juſtice, and honour, ſo often employed to maſk perfidy and falſehood. The Houzouanas offered to accede to it; and the other party were too much intereſted in its concluſion not to conſent alſo. The pledge was an ox and two ſheep, which the horde gave to the Houzouanas; and the two nations promiſed to be friends, or rather one of the two engaged to live at peace with the other.

Upon quitting the horde, we continued our march for nine miles together without halting, following the ſinuoſities of the chain of mountains; and, juſt as it was dark, arrived at a ſpring containing water ſufficient to form a rivulet, which was overſhaded by mimoſas. We had ſcarcely approached it when we were ſuddenly alarmed by a loud noiſe. It proceeded from a herd of wild animals, which, having taken up their ſtation on the banks of the rivulet, as ſoon as they perceived us betook themſelves to flight.

Deſirous of knowing with what neighbours or what enemies we had to deal, I procured a light, and perceived through the ſmoke that the fugitives were elephants. By our fires, however, and by diſcharging a few volleys from time to time, we ſoon got rid of them, and paſſed the night in tolerable quiet.

When day appeared, I found that the chain of mountains altered its direction, and ſtretched to the weſt till it diſappeared from the view. My firſt plan had been to advance to that quarter; but I could not, at preſent, perſevere in it, without expoſing myſelf and people to the danger of that horrid peſtilence which ravaged the country. I conſulted, therefore, my Houzouanas as to what route remained by which to reach Fiſh-River; for, eventually, it was there I wiſhed to arive, and it was there alſo they had agreed to conduct me.

My demand could not fail to give them ſatisfaction, ſince, by putting it in their power to guide me to the river by the ſhorteſt road, they would be the ſooner able to diſcharge their engagement, and the ſooner at liberty to go in ſearch of their companions, and return to their home.

They

They replied, that the river was on the other ſide of the mountains behind us; that if I would truſt myſelf to their care; and agree to croſs the chain, they would in two days bring me to its banks; that they were acquainted with the defiles, through which they pledged themſelves to convey my baggage in perfect ſafety; and that the firſt day, perhaps, would enable me to judge whether they were people who knew how to diſcharge their promiſes.

For myſelf, having found them hitherto tenacious of their word, I had no doubt of their fidelity, and reſolved, with the fulleſt confidence, to give myſelf up to their direction. This, however, was not the caſe with my people. Their alarm revived, and they again imagined themſelves loſt. The Greater Nimiquas, a timid race, incapable of action in the time of danger, and always ready to be frightened at ſhadows, were ſtill the firſt to diſſeminate terror. The fires which the Houzouanas every evening kindled on the eminences around us, had been to them an object of continual dread. In their opinion, they were ſignals made to call in other marauders, and give them notice of the moment

moment when they were to attack us. That moment they ſaid was approaching; for they were ſure, when led into the impaſſable defiles of the mountains, that we ſhould all one after another be maſſacred.

Though this terror appeared to me abſurd, I could employ no argument to remove it but the favourable opinion I entertained of the Houzouanas. However, before I undertook ſo hazardous a journey, the dangers and difficulties of which were unknown to us, I conceived it prudent to learn whether I could depend upon any of my people, and whether the fear manifeſted by the Nimiquas was general in my camp.

I thought proper, therefore, to interrogate Klaas, the moſt faithful and moſt ſagacious of all my troop, and who, on that account, was become my counſellor and friend. I aſked him if, during his intercourſe with the Houzouanas, and the many opportunities he muſt have had of obſerving their conduct, he had ſeen any thing that ought to inſpire me with diſtruſt reſpecting their propoſal; any thing that ſhould lead me to apprehend that, by means of their ſignals, they had kept up a

correſpondence with their friends, and intended to entice us among the mountains, where, having ſeparated us from each other, it would be eaſy for them to deſtroy us.

Klaas, ſo far from being intimidated, endeavoured to inſpire me with greater confidence. He juſtly obſerved, that the Houzouanas, by the manner in which they had hitherto conducted themſelves, had ſufficiently proved that they could have harboured againſt us no perfidious deſign; that in the courſe of the journey, inſtead of walking and conſulting together, they always intermixed with the company, were always the firſt to give me every aſſiſtance in their power, to look after my cattle, to ſhare in the labours of my camp, to brave the greateſt fatigue in order to fetch water from the ſteepeſt rocks; that as to the fires, ſo alarming to my people, they were the ſame as thoſe we had ſeen kindled at a diſtance previous to our arrival, and by no means ſignals deſigned to injure us; in ſhort, that, at all events, it would be moſt prudent to act as uſual, and not by a different behaviour give them reaſon to ſuſpect that we were afraid of or wiſhed to avoid them.

This

This language, from a man ſo obſervant, faithful, and intrepid, fixed my reſolution. It was of little importance to me, whether the Nimiquas and others of the ſame character were afraid or not, or whether they followed me or ſtaid behind. I was determined to purſue the route pointed out to me by the Houzouanas, and to abandon myſelf entirely to their direction. Beſides, I was certain that, when I ſet out, my poltroons would infallibly accompany me; which was really the caſe.

None but a nation, active and indefatigable as the Houzouanas, would have attempted to croſs theſe mountains, or have ſucceeded in their enterpriſe. For my part, I ſoon found ſo many obſtacles and embarraſſments, that, unattended by ſuch guides, I freely confeſs I ſhould have conſidered the undertaking as the height of folly, and given inſtant orders to my people to return.

The Houzouanas themſelves had even expected this; and they endeavoured, in every poſſible way, to animate and encourage us. I ſaw them run on before, aſcend the higheſt peaks to diſcover the eaſieſt paſſages, and return alertly to point them out to us. They

cared

cared not about doubling their fatigue, provided they could ſave us from any difficulty; and they diſplayed ſo much intelligence, ſo much zeal and attachment, that, from mere admiration of their conduct, I was almoſt inſenſible to the painful and diſtreſſing labour of our march.

It was the ſame with our animals. As my people were not in a condition to attend them, I was obliged to commit them entirely to the care of theſe guides; and they ſhewed the ſame fidelity in regard to this part of my caravan as to ourſelves. Whilſt ſome directed us acroſs the ravines, the narrow defiles and fiſſures, others were employed in conducting our loaded oxen over the tops of the mountains. From the bottom of the rocks which we were climbing, we could hear them above us encouraging them by their cries; and the noiſe it occaſioned, the firſt of the kind perhaps that had ever diſturbed theſe ſolitudes, was re-echoed from the ſurrounding cliffs. The wild animals were frightened by it. I ſaw antelopes, hyænas, and even tigers, flying from us at a diſtance, and repairing to their retreats. The vulture too winged his way in the air,

abandoning his uſual aſylum, and replying to the bellowing of my animals by the moſt horrid croaking.

Situated as we were, the vicinity of ferocious beaſts gave me no little uneaſineſs. Being neceſſarily ſeparated by the ruggedneſs of the place, we were perfectly unable to aſſiſt each other, and had therefore every thing to apprehend in caſe of attack. When obliged to paſs through a narrow and deep defile, we were expoſed to a danger of another kind. Encloſed between rocks piled one upon another, and which ſometimes roſe perpendicularly to the height of more than two hundred feet, we ran the riſk of being cruſhed to atoms by the fall of ſome fragment, detached by thoſe who were marching above us. In the midſt of theſe dangers, and others created by their imaginations, my poltroons were by no means at their eaſe. Conſternation was painted in their countenances. They walked along in profound ſilence, but with emotions of diſquietude at the ſame time that announced unequivocally the ſtate of their minds.

At length, by dint of clambering, we gained the ſummit of the chain; which the firſt party of my

my people had no ſooner reached, than, caſting their eyes downwards to the plain below, they ſhouted for joy, as if they had eſcaped a ſhipwreck.

We all flocked together, and the joy became general. The Houzouanas ſhared in the exultation, and pointed out to me with ſingular delight the windings of the river in the plain, and the trees with which its banks were bordered. My people began to be aſhamed of the ſuſpicions they had entertained of the fidelity of theſe men; and preſently their confidence was ſo great as almoſt to diſpel every ſhadow of uneaſineſs.

It now remained for us to deſcend the mountain; and we expected here a repetition of the fatigues which we had already experienced in aſcending it: but, beſides that the pleaſure of approaching the end of our journey could not fail to ſoften them, we had reaſon to conclude that they would be much ſooner at an end, becauſe, the level of the river being higher than the plain on the oppoſite ſide, the ſpace to be paſſed over was a great deal ſhorter; and we found alſo, at a certain diſtance from the ſummit, a convenient ſtation for

for halting. It was a verdant and delightful valley, watered by a rivulet; and it appeared the more agreeable, as amidſt theſe hideous mountains we had ſeen before nothing but objects of horror.

At ſight of this charming valley, my people forgot all their paſt fatigues, and were equally regardleſs of thoſe that were to come. The vicinity even of tigers, which had ſo much frightened them, no longer engaged their thoughts. They all joined in requeſting that I would ſtop, and allow them to paſs the night in this delightful ſpot; to which I conſented the more readily, as it afforded excellent water for ourſelves and very good paſturage for my cattle.

While my camp was preparing, I aſcended the rivulet, to recreate myſelf with the beauties of its banks. After a few windings I arrived at a rock, hollowed in the ſhape of a grotto, where the ſtream took its riſe, and where its cool limpid water formed a baſon. And here, worn out with fatigue, I could not reſiſt the temptation of enjoying the pleaſure of the bath.

This relief comforted and refreſhed me; and

and I quitted the grotto, after leaving my name inſcribed on that virgin rock, which before had perhaps never been viſited by human being.

In the night the Houzouanas ran to my tent, with great demonſtrations of joy, to inform me, that they had at length perceived the ſignals of their comrades; and they pointed out to me, in the north-weſt point of the horizon, fires, which they ſaid were made by one of their hordes, and which they had anſwered, letting the horde know that they would join it on the evening of the next day but one.

Had my company been leſs numerous, I would gladly have remained a week by this delightful brook, and near the cool grotto with which I had been ſo much pleaſed. But moſt of my people were eager to return home; the river they had in view increaſed their impatience; and the next morning they ſhowed as much ardour for departing, as they had expreſſed unwillingneſs the day before to quit the brook. Accordingly I aſſented to their wiſh; and about noon we reached the banks of the much-deſired river, without meeting

with the leaſt accident in the arduous paſſage of the mountains.

The Greater Nimiquas now began to breathe, and to recover from their fright. The firſt day of our expedition, they preſerved a gloomy ſilence, and were penſive and melancholy, as if leading to execution. On the ſecond, when they perceived the plain, their brows began to unbend a little, and I perceived they had acquired ſufficient confidence to whiſper each other in the ear. But when, arrived at the river, they breathed their native air, and ſaw again a country they knew, cheerfulneſs and a ſenſe of ſecurity overſpread their countenances, and they recovered for the firſt time their ſpeech and their wonted looks. You would have ſaid, that, being on their own dunghill, they no longer feared thoſe terrible Houzouanas, in whoſe company they had ſo trembled.

The next morning the Houzouanas announced to me, that they ſhould depart and join their comrades. I had nothing more to aſk of them, as they had performed their promiſe: yet I was not willing that theſe faithful

ful and intrepid guides ſhould leave me, without giving them ſome teſtimony of my ſatiſfaction and gratitude; but I was in doubt what would be moſt agreeable to them.

My ſtock of tobacco was ſo diminiſhed, that I had been obliged for ſome time to be ſtrictly economical in my diſtributions: beſides, theſe ſober men, leading a wandering life at ſuch a diſtance from the colony, are ſo accuſtomed to do without it, that the want of it coſts them little. On glaſs beads they ſet ſcarcely any value. What would have been moſt acceptable to them was a knife: but I had not much more than half-a-dozen left, and of courſe I could not give one to each. I reſolved, therefore, to diſtribute four among them; and, that no one might have reaſon to be diſſatisfied, I propoſed that they ſhould ſhoot at a mark, and that the four who came neareſt to it ſhould each have a knife.

This exerciſe was a ſort of feſtival for my caravan. For my own part, excluſive of the amuſement I expected from it, it would teach me, from their addreſs in handling their arms, how far the Houzouanas were formidable; and I ſhould fix in their memories an event,

which would give them reaſon to talk of me for a long time, and make me known to their nation, if, as I hoped, I ſhould reviſit it.

My propoſal was received with a ſhout of joy. The Hottentot alone appeared diſſatisfied with it, becauſe, conſcious he was the leaſt expert markſman, he deſpaired of obtaining a prize. If I had received ſervices from the Houzouanas, I was more indebted for theſe ſervices to their natural diſpoſition than to him, who, being a ſtranger lately ſettled in the horde, could have little influence with regard to their treatment of me. Yet, as he had been uſeful to me in the character of an interpreter, and as it was he who had principally given me an account of the nation, I conceived that I owed him ſome acknowledgment, and therefore promiſed him a knife.

Our fire-arms are ſo certain, in conſequence of their ſight and the manner in which they may be pointed at an object, that in reality it is almoſt a diſgrace to a man not to be dexterous in the uſe of them. It is not ſo with the bow; and, unleſs the ſavage ſhoot at an object perpendicularly over his head, the fuſileer has an infinite advantage over him, particularly if the

the object at which he aims be ſituated in an horizontal direction.

In this caſe, unleſs the diſtance be very ſhort, the arrow cannot go point-blank to the mark; but, to hit it, muſt deſcribe a parabola, to determine the elements of which requires a complicated calculation.

Another neceſſary point to be conſidered is, the exact force that muſt be given to the arrow, that it may neither go beyond nor fall ſhort of the mark.

Finally, a third indiſpenſable circumſtance to be known is the altitude of the curve, that is to ſay, the compound reſult of the force and diſtance.

To explain myſelf more clearly:—Suppoſe the mark be a hundred and fifty feet diſtance; in this caſe the leſs radius of the parabola, whatever be its extent, muſt have one third of the length of the greater diameter; or, in other words, the moſt elevated point of the courſe of the arrow muſt be fifty feet. It is neceſſary too, that this point divide the diameter of the diſtance nearly into two equal parts; ſince, if the arrow ſurmount this point, it will go be-

yond, and, if it paſs below it, will fall ſhort, of the mark.

The way of life I have ſo long led has given me ſome experience of the theory as well as practice of this art. My moſt intimate friends know, that I have often brought down ſwallows flying, by blowing an arrow through a tube: and they have ſeen me many times cut a ball in two on the edge of a knife which I have ſet up as a mark. I alſo handle the bow with conſiderable dexterity: for in my childhood I learned the uſe of this weapon among the young Caribs at Surinam, and I afterwards improved myſelf in its uſe during my travels in Africa as often as I found an opportunity, and ſometimes diſputed the palm with the ableſt Hottentot markſmen.

The ſavage knows nothing of the theory, of which I have juſt hinted at a few of the principles: but by practice and experience he acquires aſtoniſhing ability. What indeed may not be expected from people, who, having no means of defending their lives or procuring ſubſiſtence but their bow, accuſtom themſelves to handle it from their earlieſt infancy?

I have

I have obſerved that the Hottentots on the eaſt are in general very adroit in the uſe of the bow: but none of them equal the Houzouanas. With theſe the practice of the bow is become an art; and this art is even a branch of their military exerciſe, as I had an opportunity of convincing myſelf by this ſhooting-match.

The mark was a black circular ſpot made with charcoal on the white inner bark of a large mimoſa, which I cauſed to be diveſted of its outer rind. I left the candidates to fix among themſelves the diſtance from which they would ſhoot, and this they aſcertained by a ſhallow trench, which no one was allowed to overſtep.

Theſe preliminaries being ſettled, all ran to the appointed ſpot; but without order, and uttering exclamations of joy, as if each were going to certain victory.

Every one then ſelected from his quiver the arrow which he thought fitteſt for ſecuring the prize: and the precautions they took in making this choice, the care with which they examined their arrows one after another, and the attention with which they fitted them to

their bows and poiſed them in their hands, were very remarkable.

The arrow being ſelected, they placed it on their bow: then they would crouch down with their head between their knees like frogs, leap and ſpring from ſide to ſide, as if to avoid the arrows of their enemies, make feints, take aim at the mark, draw near the trench, recede from it, and take a hundred different attitudes, which at firſt appeared to me the tricks of a jack-pudding, but which were in reality employed for the purpoſe of eſtimating the ſituation and diſtance of the object.

Every inſtant I expected from their motions they were going to ſhoot: but ſuddenly they would retire back, begin again their movements and feints, and diſcharge their arrows when I leaſt expected it. At length, when they had all ſhot for the firſt prize, I gave a knife to him whoſe arrow had come neareſt to the centre of the mark.

The ſame proceeding took place for each of the other three prizes. Every time a knife was to be ſhot for, the remaining bowmen employed the ſame manœuvres; but, as the prizes diminiſhed in number, they redoubled their ardour

and

and activity; and, during more than three quarters of an hour that the ſport laſted, they diſplayed before me all the feints, evolutions, and ſtratagems, of their art of war.

This exerciſe did not end with the diſtribution of the four prizes. Thoſe who were unſucceſsful ſtill continued to ſhoot; and I could not obſerve without laughing, that ſeveral of them, after having hit the circle, were in a paſſion with themſelves for having aimed ſo ill when there was ſomething to be gained, and ſo well when it was to no purpoſe.

In my turn, to ſhow them what I could do, I placed myſelf at the trench with my large carbine, and fired ſeveral balls, each of which hit the mark.

Not contented with ſhowing them my own ſuperiority, I was deſirous of convincing them of that of my arms. For this purpoſe, I took aim at a rock four hundred paces diſtant. At every ſhot I ſtruck off from it a ſplinter, and at every ſhot I obſerved the aſtoniſhed ſavages ſeeking to divine from my countenance by what inconceivable magic I produced ſuch an effect, ſo ſpeedily and at ſo great a diſtance.

To heighten their aſtoniſhment, I placed them

them all in a line ſide by ſide, and, ſtanding at a diſtance, I put into my carbine a large charge of powder and a ball with a hole through it; and then firing, I made the ball whiz over their heads.

The whizzing, which they heard before the report of the carbine, ſtupefied them with wonder. They doubted not but I could ſend a ball as far as I pleaſed, and that this had gone to take effect at an immeaſurable diſtance.

Theſe experiments, added to other exploits they had often ſeen me perform, ſuch as bringing down ſmall birds on the wing, and even beetles, gave them a high opinion of my ſuperiority.

Having thus impreſſed on their minds an exalted idea of my power, I repreſented to them how prudently they had acted in receiving me with friendſhip, and how raſh it would be in any of their hordes to provoke my wrath by offending me. I deſired them to warn their countrymen of the riſk they would run on ſuch an occaſion; but at the ſame time I aſſured them, that, wherever I met any of them, I ſhould always endeavour to make them my friends, as I had acted by their horde.

Finally,

Finally, I reminded them of the ſervices I had been ſo eager to render them, and warmly thanked them for thoſe they had rendered me in their turn.

This produced the effect I expected. They all renewed their profeſſions of friendſhip and attachment, both in their own name and that of their comrades. The women themſelves pointing to the jewels and ornaments I had beſtowed on them, gave me to underſtand, that they would conſider it as a duty to wear them, that all the Houzouanas might learn to know the white man, the friend of their nation.

I was much flattered by theſe expreſſions of gratitude, from which I derived the more pleaſure, as they proceeded from thoſe who had not ſhared in the prizes of knives which I had ſo recently diſtributed.

As a compenſation for this, I added liberally to the ornaments I had already beſtowed on them, others of the ſame kind, with which they were highly pleaſed. The company of the women of my caravan had given them ſome taſte for dreſs. They were proud of thus ornamenting themſelves before their huſbands,

who

who ſeemed, on account of it, to like them the better; and I am perſuaded, that to the other Houzouana women of the country they would become objects of admiration and envy. Delightful amuſement! Enchanting moments! In what a world, and under what laws, muſt I regret your loſs!

I could have wiſhed to reclaim the Hottentot from the wandering life he had embraced; which I urged him to quit, offering to conduct him back to the plantations with me: but he ſteadily refuſed to comply with my ſolicitations. He had a wife and two young children, from whom he could not part; and this motive rendered his determination reſpectable in my eyes. In that country the ſentiments of nature are not learned from books, nor is it neceſſary to write a volume in order to ſhow what is right and what is wrong. When we parted, the people of the horde preſſed my hand, and even my cowards joined in the ceremony. Yet I perceived, on more faces than one, an expreſſion of pleaſure at being delivered from the burden of fear; and that ſo many ſervices, and ſo much friendſhip and confidence, had not been able totally to eradicate prejudice from every

heart. Alas! how miſchievous in its effects and how difficult to counteract is common fame!

For myſelf, who, far from fearing the Houzouanas, had felt pleaſure from their ſociety, and entertained an affection for them, I once more confeſs that I did not part from them without regret; that I found them an active, laborious, and intelligent race of men, ever ready to oblige in ſpite of obſtacles, and ſuperior to other ſavages both in courage and ability.

What indeed particularly inſpired me with a predilection in their favour, was their open and ſmiling countenance. Such is the habitual ſtate of their features, that the gloomy and dubious impreſſion of uneaſineſs and miſtruſt is never perceptible on them. The Houzouana, it is true, has violent paſſions, and, when he is under their influence, they are depicted on his countenance in a forcible and ſtriking manner: but the ſtorm is of ſhort duration; he ſoon comes to himſelf, and his face inſtantly reſumes the expreſſion of his frank, unſuſpecting, and loyal mind.

Among all the other African nations, almoſt with-

without exception, I found an imbecile ſtupidity, which made them enraptured with every thing I carried with me for my uſe. The Houzouanas contemplated them with thoſe emotions of curioſity which every production of induſtry would naturally excite in a people deſtitute of arts; but this curioſity was neither ſtupid admiration nor the childiſh deſire of ſavages in general.

Nothing filled them with real aſtoniſhment but my fire-arms. During the whole time they were with me, theſe were the ſubjects of their attention and diſcourſe. But it is to be obſerved, I had endeavoured to inſpire them with the greateſt terror by diſplaying their effects. I never ſuffered them to touch my ſuſees, and I was particularly careful not to ſhow them the mode of uſing them. When once they had imbibed the deſire of poſſeſſing them, perhaps it would not be long before they would contrive means of procuring them; and then how dangerous would be theſe mountaineers to the plantations, and even to the Cape itſelf; ſince, ſecure from attack in their mountains, and indefatigable in their expeditions, their nocturnal and unexpected attacks render

render them already irreſiſtible enemies! Often have I rejoiced that the nation was one of the pooreſt of Africa; and that, being deſtitute of every thing, it had nothing to barter by way of trade. But for this, ſuch of the coloniſts who follow the occupation of traverſing the deſerts, would perhaps have penetrated as far as theſe people; perhaps would have ſupplied them with powder and fire-arms, and certainly would have inſtilled into them the deſire of procuring them; and who can tell to what this deſire would have led!

Yet theſe formidable people inſpired me with more love and eſteem than any other tribe in Africa. With them I would have undertaken without fear to traverſe the whole of that quarter of the globe, had my good fortune permitted me to know them ſooner: and if ever circumſtances allow me to reſume the project, which it has been ſo painful to me to relinquiſh, they are the only ones that ſhall be my companions in the enterpriſe, and to them alone will I direct my ſteps without delay.

From the pleaſure which it ſtill gives me to talk of them an idea may be formed of the pain

I felt

I felt at their departure. During the remainder of the day, I experienced a wearifome void; ſomething ſeemed wanting to me; and the ſatisfaction that their abſence afforded to ſeveral of my Hottentots did but increaſe my vexation. They exulted as if they had carried their point againſt me: and fancied, now the Houzouanas were gone, they ſhould become again as neceſſary to me as ever.

Night gave a little check to this inſolent joy. At the cloſe of day, we perceived fires at two or three leagues diſtance on our right; and theſe fires abated their confidence and revived their fears. Probably they were ſignals made by the Houzouanas who had left me to inform their comrades of their ſituation. But the ſingle idea of Houzouanas was ſufficient to excite terror in my troop. My people had no doubt but it was a new horde, by which we ſhould ſpeedily be attacked; and in conſequence they all ſpent the night on the watch, tormenting and perplexing themſelves with ſiniſter conjectures. For my part, to puniſh them for their inſolence, I reſolved to leave them in their miſtake. I even pretended to be of their opinion reſpecting the fires, and while

while they were kept awake by their fears, I retired to my tent to ſleep in tranquillity.

This anxious night ſerved but to increaſe their impatience to return home. Had I liſtened to them, I ſhould have ſet off the next morning the ſhorteſt way to my camp at Orange-River. But I had not yet forgotten the pleaſant days I had ſpent on the upper part of this river, and I was not deſirous of quitting ſo haſtily the banks of a ſtream, near which I had procured ſo many birds for my collection, and the water and paſtures of which could alone recover my cattle from the fatigue they had undergone I was reſolved, therefore, to follow its courſe for ſome time; and the very next day I ſpent ſix hours in tracing its windings.

This excurſion afforded me ſeveral new ſpecies of birds, and particularly a variety of the touraco, different from that which I ſaw in the Auteniqua country. The ſucceeding days were equally fortunate, and added alike to my pleaſures, my acquiſitions, and my diſcoveries.

In one of my hunts I killed a monſtrous boar, altogether different from any known ſpe-

cies. Its ſnout inſtead of being taper and in the form of a proboſcis, is on the contrary very broad and ſquare at the end. It has ſmall eyes, at a very little diſtance from each other, level with the ſurface, and near the top of the forehead. On each cheek a very thick cartilaginous ſkin projects horizontally, being about three inches long and as many broad. At firſt ſight you would be tempted to take theſe excreſcences for the ears; particularly as the real ears of the animal, ſticking as it were to the neck which is very ſhort, are partly concealed by an enormous mane, the briſtles of which, in colour red, brown, and greyiſh, are ſixteen inches in length on the ſhoulders. Directly below theſe falſe ears is a bony protuberance on each ſide, projecting more than an inch, ſerving the animal to ſtrike with to the right and left. The boar has, beſides, four tuſks, of the nature of ivory, two in each jaw: the upper ones are ſeven or eight inches long; very thick at the baſe and terminating in an obtuſe point, grooved, and riſing perpendicularly as they iſſue from the lips: the lower ones are much ſmaller, and ſo cloſe to the upper ones when the mouth is ſhut, that they appear

LARGE-SNOUTED BOAR.

appear as one. The head is a truly hideous object. It is ſcarcely leſs ſo than that of the hippopotamus, to which at firſt view it appears to have a ſtriking reſemblance. Syſtematiſts, accuſtomed to view nature only according to rules eſtabliſhed by themſelves, will be far from acknowledging this animal to be a boar: for, not to mention its large ſnout, it wants inciſive teeth in both jaws. Notwithſtanding its wide muzzle, it ploughs up the earth to ſeek for roots, on which it feeds. It is very active, though large and bulky; running with ſuch ſpeed, that the Hottentots give it the name of the runner. Some future day I ſhall return to this intereſting quadruped: and in the mean time I ſhall here give a plate of a young one which I have in my collection*.

Having ſeen neither the mouth nor the ſource of Fiſh-River, I cannot ſpeak with certainty of its ſituation, and muſt rely on ſea-

* Buffon has given a figure of this Cape boar from profeſſor Allamand, in his Supplement to his Hiſtory of Quadrupeds, vol. v, plate 11, of the duodecimo edition: but nothing like the head of this animal is diſcoverable in the figure, as all its characteriſtics have been omitted by the draughtſman.

men and geographers, at leaſt for what regards the place where it pours itſelf into the ſea. I ſhall only remark, that, in a country ſo irregular as Africa, it is very difficult to know a river which runs any conſiderable way. At one time, piercing through ſteep mountains, or loſing itſelf under rocks; at another, falling down from them in caſcades, frequently perhaps in diverging branches, which, when they meet, take a contrary direction, and return back towards its ſource; it is by no means eaſy to trace it, amid ſo many obſtacles. To ſucceed in this, I know but one method, which would be to ſet out from the ſource of the river, and thence to travel conſtantly along its banks, without once loſing ſight of it. But who would attempt ſuch an enterpriſe? And, were it attempted, would it always be practicable?

At my third encampment by this river, my Nimiquas recollected a chain of very lofty mountains, the paſturage of which they highly extolled; and added, that on this account there was almoſt always a horde of their countrymen ſtationed there. Theſe praiſes were not without deſign, and this deſign it was eaſy to gueſs; but, as it accorded with my own, I made

made no difficulty in acceding to it. Accordingly I decamped, and directed my courſe towards the mountains. After two days ſhort journey, we arrived in a pleaſant valley, ſhaded by a prodigious number of mimoſas in full bloom, and where we found ſeveral herds of cattle, which denoted ſome Hottentots to be in the neighbourhood.

The Nimiquas having advanced with Klaas to announce my coming, we ſoon ſaw the whole horde approaching. At this ſight my people expreſſed the higheſt joy. You would have ſaid, that, after having eſcaped from aſſaſſins, they had found protectors to place their lives in a ſtate of ſecurity. They congratulated each other, ſqueezed the hands of the new comers, preſſed them to their breaſts, and overwhelmed them with expreſſions of friendſhip. Had they been their acquaintance or relations, they could not have diſplayed more tranſport. The beauty of the paſtures, which every where covered the feet of the mountains, made us reſolve to ſpend a few days near the horde.

When my tent was erected, the chief of the horde came to ſee me, and give me very

agreeable news of my camp on Orange-River, where no diſaſter had happened during my abſence, as he learned from the people of another horde, who had gone thither to exchange cattle for tobacco. He would gladly have ſent thither ſome of his people alſo for the ſame purpoſe, as there was not a morſel of tobacco in his kraal; but an alarming circumſtance kept him in continual fear, and prevented him from weakening his company, which was not numerous, by detaching from it a party of men.

A lion and lioneſs had for ſome time taken up their abode near the horde, in an impenetrable thicket which he pointed out to me. The horde had endeavoured to diſlodge them, but in vain; and they ſtill retained poſſeſſion of their fortreſs. Every night they iſſued forth to attack not the herd only, but even the men; and the very night before my arrival they had carried off an ox. Full of hope and confidence in my fire-arms, the chief congratulated himſelf on my coming, and requeſted me to employ my weapons to deliver them from ſuch a ſcourge, not doubting but I ſhould ſucceed if I would make the attempt.

Of

Of the two obligations that might be conferred on theſe good people, one was not in my power, that of ſupplying them with tobacco. My people had been at half their uſual allowance of this article for a month paſt, and even at that rate I had not enough to anſwer the demand of my journey: of courſe I was not willing, by an improper diſplay of liberality, to give them reaſon to accuſe me of depriving them of their due, for the purpoſe of gratifying ſtrangers at their expence.

With reſpect to the lions, it was more eaſy for me to render the horde the ſervice they wanted; but this required much prudence and circumſpection. Their obſtinately perſevering to remain in the thicket, notwithſtanding all that had been done to drive them out, gave me reaſon to ſuſpect they had young ones; and this circumſtance rendered the attack a buſineſs of no ſmall danger.

Theſe animals, at all times formidable, have at ſuch periods a fierceneſs that nothing can reſiſt. Animated by the neceſſity of defending and procuring food for their young, they dread no danger, and would face a whole

army. It is not courage they then poſſeſs—it is raging madneſs.

Nevertheleſs I promiſed to attack them the next day, and engaged at leaſt to drive them away, if I could not deſtroy them. Conſidering, however, the cloſeneſs of the thicket and the difficulty of the attack, I required, exclusive of all my own people whom I intended to employ, that thoſe of the horde ſhould alſo join me. During the night we ſurrounded ourſelves with very large fires, and diſcharged from time to time our muſkets. But theſe precautions were unneceſſary; for the lions, having the remains of their ox to devour, did not appear, though we heard them during a great part of the night.

At break of day, the men of the horde were ready, armed with arrows and aſſagays, and waited nothing but my orders to proceed to the attack. Even the women and children would be of the party; leſs indeed to fight than to ſatisfy their curioſity and enjoy our victory. I heard the lions ſtill growling in their ſtrong hold; but the increaſing light ſoon ſilenced them. The ſun appeared; and the profound

profound ſilence that then prevailed was the ſignal for our departure.

The thicket was about two hundred paces long and ſixty wide. It occupied a ſpot ſunk lower than the adjacent ground, ſo that it was to be entered on a deſcent. The whole conſiſted of buſhes and briers, except ſome mimoſas which roſe from its centre. Theſe trees, could I have reached them, would have afforded me an advantageous poſition for the attack. On their ſummits I ſhould have been ſecure, and might have ſhot the two animals at my eaſe: but, not knowing exactly the ſituation of their lair, it would have been highly imprudent in me to traverſe the thicket, in order to reach theſe trees, ſince I ſhould thereby have expoſed myſelf to the danger of being ſeized by the way.

Unable to attack theſe formidable beaſts in their retrenchments, all that remained was to tempt them out of their fort; for it was difficult, not to ſay impoſſible, to come at them through the briers and buſhes that covered them, and my markſmen would vainly have attempted to manage or preſent with any aim, when thus entangled, their long ſuſees. I therefore determined to place them and the other

other ſavages at certain diſtances from each other upon the eminences all round the wood, ſo that the lions ſhould be unable to reach the plain without being perceived; perſuaded that in the open country we ſhould be the ſtronger party and finally triumphant.

None of the ſavages daring to enter the wood, we reſolved to force all the oxen of the horde into it. Accordingly, when we were at our poſts, with our guns ready to fire, we drove the oxen before us, compelling them by our voices and blows to enter the thicket. At the ſame time my dogs opened, and I fired off ſeveral piſtols to frighten the lions and make them come out.

The oxen, ſcenting their enemies, ſoon ruſhed back with affright, and returned towards us; but our cries, the barking of the dogs, and the report of our arms, compelled them to re-enter the thicket, which they did in a ſort of fury, joſtling one another, and bellowing in a fearful manner.

The lions on their ſide were rouſed at the ſight of danger, and their rage vented itſelf in dreadful roars. We heard them in every part of the thicket, without their daring to ſhew themſelves

ſelves any where, or advance upon us. The conflict of two armies could not be more loud than their threatening voices, confounded with the cries of men and dogs, and the furious lowing of the oxen. This hideous concert continued great part of the morning, and we began to deſpair of the ſucceſs of our enterpriſe, when ſuddenly I heard, on the ſide oppoſite to me, piercing cries inſtantly followed by the report of a gun, which made me tremble. But ſhouts of joy immediately ſucceeded, and, paſſing from one to another along the circle till they came to me, announced a victory. I ran to the place, and found the lioneſs expiring. Klaas, who was ſtationed at that poſt, had fired and ſhot her through the body. Her dugs, though without milk, were ſwelled and pendent, which indicated ſhe had young ones, and proved that I had not been miſtaken in my conjecture.

It came into my head to employ her carcaſe for the purpoſe of enticing them out of the thicket. With this view I ordered it to be drawn to a certain diſtance, not doubting but the young ones would come in queſt of their dam,

dam, and that the male would probably follow either to avenge or defend them.

I collected at my new poſt ſome of my hunters from the right and left, and we retired to the diſtance of thirty paces from the carcaſe, ready to fire if the animals advanced. But my ſtratagem was unſucceſsful, and we ſpent ſeveral hours waiting for them in vain.

The whelps, indeed, uneaſy at not ſeeing their mother, ran about the thicket, growling on all ſides. The male too, on being ſeparated from her, redoubled his roarings and his rage. We ſaw him for a moment appear at the edge of the thicket, his eyes ſparkling, his mane erect, and laſhing his ſides with his tail. But unfortunately he was out of ſhot of my carbine; and one of my markſmen, who was poſted nearer, fired and miſſed him. At this he retired; and, whether he feared to attack ſo numerous a body of men, or was unwilling to leave his young, or had received ſome ſlight wound, he appeared no more. Though animals of this ſpecies, as I have already obſerved, are more fierce and intrepid when they have young than at any other period, yet the males

are

are not ſo much ſo as the females—a fact well known to the ſavages.

After waiting a long time to no purpoſe, and deſpairing of the ſucceſs of my ſtratagem, I reſolved to return to my former plan of attack. In conſequence I ſent all the people to their poſts, and we again attempted to drive the oxen into the thicket, in order to diſlodge the remainder of the family. But they were too much frighted. They all refuſed to proceed, and I was obliged to give up the deſign; though my dogs, animated by the blood of the lioneſs, which they had ſcented, opened with great ardour, and ſhowed much eagerneſs for the ſport.

We had ſpent a conſiderable part of the day in the chace; the ſun was declining; and it would become more dangerous. I deemed it prudent, therefore, to think of retreating, and to defer our final victory till the next day.

The ſavages conveyed the lioneſs to the kraal, for the purpoſe of feaſting on her: but, as I was deſirous of her ſkin, I directed this to be firſt taken off. She was four feet four inches and half [about four feet eight inches Engliſh]

Engliſh] high, to the top of the ſhoulder, and ten feet eight inches [eleven feet four inches] long, from the point of the noſe to the extremity of the tail.

When the animal was flayed, Klaas very naturally threw the ſkin over his ſhoulders to carry it to the kraal, whither he was accompanied with ſhouts by all the horde. He himſelf trod like a hero. I obſerved this new Alcides; and, diſtant as I was from the lions of Nemea, the reſemblance was ſo ſtriking, that I caught myſelf marching gravely in the midſt of this renewal of the Grecian feſtival. If my Klaas obtained not all the honours of the ſon of Alcmena, it was apparently becauſe a more powerful deity had directed his arm. I too had ſome ſhare in the buſineſs; the plan of the attack was mine, and in conſequence I was loaded with thanks and praiſes.

The chief requeſted me to accept four ſheep and a couple of oxen in the name of the horde, as a teſtimony of its gratitude. The ſheep I immediately killed, to add to the entertainment which the lioneſs was to furniſh: but the two oxen I gave up to Klaas, who in fact had well earned them. At firſt he refuſed, and perſiſted

ſiſted in their being mine. But when I urged to him, that they were preſented on account of the death of the lioneſs, and that this death was his work, he no longer heſitated to accept them.

This feaſt was the more agreeable, as, in part, it conſiſted of the animal which had occaſioned ſo much deſtruction. I had certainly not the ſame deſire for its fleſh as the reſt of the gueſts; yet I was induced to taſte, but found it inferior to that of the tiger.

After the repaſt came the amuſements. The company danced and ſung all night; and their revelry, which did not allow me a moment's ſleep, ſerved alſo to remind me of the Nemean ſports.

During the night I heard nothing either of the lion or the whelps: but this I aſcribed to the noiſy mirth of my ſavages; and indeed had all the lions of the country aſſembled in the thicket to roar in concert, I know not whether their voices would not have been drowned in the uproar of the feaſt. There was another reaſon, however, for this ſilence. The male, affrighted by the dangers he had run, availed himſelf of the darkneſs of the night

night to retire with his family; and in the morning, when we returned to the chace, we found the thicket deſerted.

From the firſt movements of my dogs when they entered the buſhes, and their manner of hunting, I perceived that we were too late. To be certain, however, I fired off a piſtol a few times, hoping that the animals, if they were ſtill there, would be rouſed at the report, and ſoon cauſe themſelves to be heard, either by their growling, or the ſtir they would make in the buſhes.

This preliminary having produced no ſigns of any thing being preſent, we cautiouſly advanced into the thicket, where we found the marks only of the ſpoil that had been made by this hungry family. On all ſides were ſeen bones ſcattered about or lying in heaps; and the ſight of this charnel-houſe, reminding the horde of the loſſes it had experienced, each began to relate and lament his own.

In the mean time I employed myſelf in tracing the footſteps of the lion and the whelps, to judge of the bulk of the one, and the number and ſize of the others. Though there are inſtances of a lioneſs having three young

ones at a litter, this appeared to have had but two; which I had reaſon to ſuppoſe were equal at leaſt to my great dog Yager, who was as high as my middle, and conſequently they were already formidable, and capable of doing conſiderable miſchief.

To judge of the old lion from the print of his foot, which was one third larger than that of the lioneſs, he muſt have been of the largeſt ſize.

Some critic, I know not who, amuſing himſelf with ſome animadverſions upon me in the *Journal de Paris*, May 25, 1788, places me "with a lion face to face," and then pompouſly adds, "that we examined each other "with haughty looks, but my intrepid cou- "rage at length obliged the animal to take to "his heels."

The attitude is fine, no doubt! but, when he gave me ſuch a powerful look, he ſhould not have forgotten to beſtow on me the club and the ſtrength of Hercules. Whatever my critic may think, it is certain, that the firſt reflection of any man, however brave, unleſs at the ſame time he be a fool or a madman, when he finds himſelf before a formidable

enemy, is to compare his ſtrength with that of his antagoniſt; and, if he find them very unequal, the danger to which he is expoſed muſt neceſſarily have its weight with him. This at leaſt I have always experienced, and certainly I do not think myſelf more of a coward than another man. Accordingly, whenever I have found myſelf "face to face" with an elephant, a rhinoceros, a tiger, a lion, or the like, I confeſs, notwithſtanding my confidence in my weapons, far from feeling myſelf, at the firſt inſtant, totally devoid of alarm: I have always experienced a violent palpitation, a ſenſation cloſely allied to fear. But this is of ſhort duration, and has never deterred me from the attack, well aſſured of the ſuperiority given me by my prudence and arms. Then, laying aſide every idea of danger, I have marched ſtraight forward to my enemy, however formidable he may be, and, if a wild beaſt, have thought only of killing, wounding, or at leaſt putting him to flight.

To wait in ambuſh for a lion, and fire at him as he paſſes by, is an enterpriſe not without danger; but to attack in "face" a lioneſs attended by her whelps and their father, and in her

her impenetrable retreat, would be raſh even to madneſs, without previouſly ſecuring every kind of aſſiſtance that can command ſucceſs. And even this would be unpardonable, unleſs required by urgent neceſſity.

Savages know by experience the peril of ſuch enterpriſes, and therefore never ſettle in a place where they ſuſpect there are any whelps. Woe betide the horde that may be near them! Almoſt every night their herds will be attacked. It is a tribute they muſt neceſſarily pay, and from which they will ſeldom endeavour to guard themſelves, chooſing rather to wait with patience till the young family, ceaſing to be a burden to their parents, ſhall go and fix themſelves elſewhere.

The horde near this thicket would never have ventured to propoſe to me ſuch an attack, but for their high confidence in my fire-arms; and I, notwithſtanding the aſſiſtance of my hunters and my numerous company, would not have heſitated to refuſe, if, when aſking this ſervice of me as an extraordinary favour, they had not conſented to ſhare with us the whole of the danger.

Theſe were my motives for adopting the

reſolution I took, and I had every reaſon to congratulate myſelf on my ſucceſs; ſince, of the four beaſts we had to deſtroy, the moſt formidable was ſlain, and the three others took flight; while, to increaſe my happineſs, not a ſingle perſon was wounded, nor even one of the oxen that were driven into the thicket. Had we killed the lion firſt, we ſhould probably have deſtroyed the whole family; but, if one of the whelps had fallen a ſacrifice before its mother, there is little doubt but it would have coſt the life of one of us, ſince the event would have ſo enraged the lioneſs, that ſhe would have braved every danger, and ruſhed inſtantly upon the party. Accordingly I had ſtrictly enjoined every one not to fire at the young ones till the old ones were killed.

Satisfied with having delivered the horde from this ſcourge, and having no other motive to remain with them, I fixed the next day but one for my departure. This declaration was by no means agreeable to my people. They had found among theſe Nimiquas the ſame eaſy and compliant manners as they had before experienced in ſome other hordes, which induced them to wiſh for a longer ſtay. When they

they parted from the Houzouanas, they had deſired to return to the camp at Orange-River the ſhorteſt way; and now they aſked to remain where we were, without alleging a ſingle reaſon for it. But ſuch requeſts were little calculated to have any weight with me. I was not a man to change my purpoſes to gratify the inclinations of people of whom I had ſo much reaſon to complain; and I therefore declared that I ſhould perſiſt in my intentions.

There were two different ways to Orange-River, between which I had to chooſe. One was to proceed to the weſt till I reached the ſea-ſide, proceed along the coaſt to the mouth of the river, and then travel up its banks to the camp of the giraffe. For the other, I had only to follow the direction of the mountains; and, as they ran ſouth, thereby pointing out my courſe, this would be the moſt certain as well as the ſhorteſt and eaſieſt.

I was, however, more inclined to the former, becauſe, by travelling along the river's ſide, I ſhould diſcover its courſe, which I much wiſhed. But, ſhort as I was of tobacco and other ſimilar ſtores, how prevail on perſons already murmuring at the diminution of their

allowance, and who would ſoon be reduced to a total ſtoppage of it, to take ſo long a round? How induce the Greater Nimiquas, now on the point of rejoining their horde, to turn their backs, and wander from it anew? Above all, with ſuch a large train and ſo many cattle, how undertake to traverſe plains, neither more rugged nor difficult, it is true, than that we had already croſſed, but in which, inſtead of the indefatigable Houzouanas, I had attendants who, for the moſt part, were of little uſe to me, and almoſt all of whom had forfeited my confidence?

By taking the other road, I learned from the chief of the horde, that, after two days march, I ſhould fall in with another of this nation; that this would conduct me to a third; and that thus it would be eaſy for me to proceed from horde to horde with ſure guides as far as Orange-River. As he offered to ſend ſome of his own people to conduct me to the firſt, I accepted his offer, and departed with the more ſatisfaction, as I reflected, that it would be in my power when I arrived at the camp, if circumſtances permitted it, to reſume my ſcheme of tracing the courſe of the ſtream.

Moſt

Moſt of my people were ſo enfeebled by the pleaſures of every kind in which they had indulged during their reſidence with the horde, that many, unable to ſupport the fatigues of the march, remained behind at different diſtances. At length the number of theſe loiterers became ſo conſiderable, that I was obliged to halt, after travelling ſix leagues, in an angle of the mountains where the chain, altering its direction, turned to the ſouth-eaſt. The horde we had quitted had previouſly reſided here, ſo that the paſture had been eaten up; and we found only the firſt ſhoots of the new graſs.

Here, after having long ceaſed to ſee any giraffes, I met with them again for the firſt time. My guides aſſured me, the farther I went to the weſt, the more ſcarce they would become; and I could eaſily believe them, from the ſmall number that appeared in the preſent inſtance, compared with what I had ſeen to the eaſt.

On my return to the Cape, Pinar told me, that, after we ſeparated, having travelled up Orange-River for ſeveral days, he had all the way ſeen giraffes, though never on the left bank;

nor indeed have I ever heard of any making their appearance there: whence I conclude, that in this ſouthern part of Africa the diſtrict inhabited by theſe animals is a ſpace of about four degrees, that is to ſay, the interval between the two rivers, Fiſh and Orange river.

Not that they have been excluſively confined to this ſpot by nature, and are unable to exiſt in any other. On the contrary, they have been ſeen at Galam on the Senegal, three hundred leagues from its mouth; at leaſt I have heard ſo from people of credit. We read in ancient travellers, that they were to be found in India: and if the moderns do not ſpeak of them there, it is becauſe the breed is deſtroyed, or become leſs numerous, and retired into the deſerts. Bruce alſo mentions a giraffe which he ſaw in Abyſſinia. I ſuſpect, however, that it was ſome other quadruped, and not a giraffe, ſince he tells us that theſe animals have the horns of an antelope.

Reſuming our journey the next day, we perceived about noon a herd of horned cattle, which announced the horde we were ſeeking. But at ſight of us their keepers were alarmed,

and fled towards the kraal, driving their cattle before them as faſt as poſſible.

This did not aſtoniſh me, and was what I expected; ſince, independently of our number, our appearance alſo was terrifying.—Though it was the month of March, and the heat began to abate, it was yet ſufficient to incommode us, ſo that we continued to wear thoſe umbrellas of which I have ſpoken above, and which, from their unuſual figure, muſt have rendered us ſo many ſcarecrows.

I diſpatched my guides after the fugitives, to remove their apprehenſions, and ſtop them before they communicated the alarm to the horde. Accordingly they waited for me, teſtified their friendſhip, and went to acquaint their comrades with my arrival. Several of my people went with them, and I ſhortly followed; but I ſtopped and encamped at ſome diſtance from the kraal; for I had not yet forgotten the noiſy nights ſpent at the preceding horde, and was deſirous of being permitted to ſleep at this in quiet.

Men, women, and children, came all to ſee me. The ſavage knows ſcarcely more than two ſentiments toward ſtrangers—either ex-

treme miſtruſt or unbounded confidence. Giving himſelf up entirely to the one or the other, he admits no intermediate ſhades in his intercourſe. Thoſe cunning artifices which we term prudence and circumſpection are unknown to him. Thus he ſhows himſelf exactly as he is; ſo that you cannot be miſtaken in his conduct, and are warned to be on your guard, or invited to truſt in him with ſecurity.

I propoſed for the next day to hunt giraffes. All the horde joined in this diverſion, and were employed in driving the animals towards us. We were ſo fortunate as to kill a female, which meaſured in height about fourteen feet four inches [Engliſh], and, according to the ſavages, it was one of the largeſt ſize. This female we ſuppoſed by the appearance of the teeth to be very old, and its colour accordingly approached very near that of the males. I was deſirous of finding one with her foal, as perhaps I might have caught the young one alive; and I was in hopes this would have had one in her womb, but my hopes were diſappointed.

In proportion as I drew near to my camp, I remembered the need I had of procuring oxen,

This

This horde had many; but I could procure only ſeven, for want of merchandiſe. The people wiſhed for tobacco and dacca (the leaves of hemp); commodities with which I was unable to ſupply them. I had ſtill a tolerable quantity of beads, but upon theſe they ſet very little value.

Fortunately the women obſerved among my wares ſome red and white beads about the ſize of a hazel nut, which pleaſed them ſo much by their variegated colour, that they would have given for them all they poſſeſſed. The men too appeared equally fond of them. Theſe, therefore, a dozen or two of large nails, and ſome braſs wire for bracelets, anſwered my purpoſe of barter.

To the greater part of my readers, perhaps, theſe remarks will ſeem trivial; but to travellers who undertake, like me, to viſit Africa, they are of great importance, and, on that account, I ought by no means to omit them.

On quitting the horde, I diſmiſſed the guides who had conducted me thither, and took others to ſhow me the way to the next. We bent our courſe to the eaſt, following the direction of the mountains; but an accident happened

pened on the road, which had like to have done much miſchief, or even coſt me my life.

One of my oxen was laden with the boxes which contained the articles of traffic; and one of theſe boxes, probably not well faſtened, made ſuch a noiſe by its ſhaking that the animal became reſtleſs. Teaſed by the continual clacking of the box, he made an effort to ſhake it off, and at laſt ſucceeded; but the others, loſtened and dragged down by it in its fall, fell likewiſe, and made ſuch a clatter, that the ox and all that were near him, being terrified, betook themſelves to flight.

The alarm communicated itſelf to the reſt, and all my animals, goats, ſheep, and horſes, ſcampered off each a different way. In a moment the whole caravan was in confuſion, and the drivers themſelves, dragged along by their beaſts, which they could not ſtop, were diſperſed with them.

The moſt diſtant of the fugitives was the pack-ox that firſt took flight; but, hampered in his courſe by the ſtraps of his baggage, and not being able to diſengage himſelf from them, he had ſtopped, and was plunging and bellowing

ing with rage. I galloped up to him, with the deſign to drive him towards the caravan; but he anſwered my endeavours by a ſtroke of his horn, which gored my horſe in the flank and tore his leg; and the horſe, giving a ſudden ſpring, fell down on his ſide, threw me ten paces from him, and ran away.

Fortunately, in my fall, I retained faſt hold of my gun; and this circumſtance ſaved my life. The ox ruſhed upon me, with his noſe to the ground, ready to gore me with his horns and toſs me into the air, when I cocked my piece, and, by one of the luckieſt ſhots I ever fired, laid him dead at the diſtance only of a few yards from me.

The animal was the property of one of the Kaminouquas who attended me. At this moment his maſter came up out of breath to ſeize him and bring him back; but he arrived only in time to ſee him yield his laſt breath. At this ſight the poor Kaminouqua was diſtracted; he began to weep like a child, and to launch out in praiſe of his ox, which he ſaid was the beſt and the moſt dear to him he had ever poſſeſſed, and that he ſhould regret the loſs during his whole life.

However, when I promiſed to give him another

another, or to pay him according to his own valuation, his tears were dried up at once, his lamentation ceaſed; and ſo ſpeedily was this inconſolable man reconciled to his loſs, that, having called ſome of his comrades to aſſiſt him, he ſet himſelf inſtantly to work to flay and cut into quarters his beſt friend, in order to feaſt on him the very ſame day.

In the mean time I directed my ſcattered merchandize to be collected. This occupied ſo much time, that we were able to advance only five leagues the whole day. The next we made very little more progreſs; but this was owing to an accident of a different kind, to one of thoſe terrible ſouth-eaſt winds, which are the moſt ſurpriſing phenomena and terrible plagues of Africa.

It began to threaten us in the morning; and ſoon increaſing every moment in violence, it overwhelmed us with ſuch clouds of ſand and gravel, that we were abſolutely blinded, and prevented from advancing. Its fury, increaſed by the reſiſtance of the lofty mountains to the eaſt, through the defiles of which it had to force its paſſage, became at length ſo great that we were obliged to halt.

Having unloaded the oxen, we placed our

baggage in heaps, covering them at the ſame time with large ſtones, to prevent their being blown away.

As it was impoſſible for us to erect a tent, we had no ſhelter, and our only reſource was to ſit or lie down on the ground, inhaling the ſand by which we were blinded.

In the evening we ſurrounded ourſelves with large fires as uſual; but, the wind continuing, the wood was ſo quickly conſumed, that we were obliged to paſs three-fourths of the night without any. Yet we had every thing to fear from the wild beaſts, for we had perceived the footſteps of ſeveral on our road; and it would have been vain to have endeavoured to keep them off by the report of our guns, for the wind was ſo loud that they could not have been heard to any purpoſe.

The night was ſpent in fear and apprehenſion, and we waited the return of day with impatience: but, far from its reſtoring tranquillity to the atmoſphere, the violence of the wind increaſed as the ſun roſe above the horizon; and though the ſky was without a cloud, the face of the ſun was obſcured by the columns of

ſand,

ſand, which crowding on each other, darkened the atmoſphere as they paſſed over our head.

What we experienced was neither a ſtorm, nor a tempeſt, nor a hurricane: it was a true and terrible whirlwind *(typhon)*. Paterſon, who experienced a ſimilar one beyond Orange-River, ſays, that the trees round him were torn up by the roots. Near us there were no trees; but I ſaw the wind, as it whirled round, form deep cavities in the ground, carry the earth and ſand to a conſiderable diſtance, and then let it fall in ſhowers on our heads. All the victuals we dreſſed were ſo covered with ſand, that it was impoſſible to eat them.

To this inſupportable conſtraint was added the uneaſineſs given me by our herds, which, collected in a maſs, remained motionleſs without any deſire to eat; and, what was ſtill worſe, there was not a drop of water near the camp. Such were the vexatious conſequences of our ſituation; nor, obliged to ſtop on a ſudden in my way, was it in my power to chooſe a better halting-place.

About noon, finding the wind did not abate, we reſolved to reſume our journey, and proceed

ceed towards a cluſter of mountains to the ſouth-eaſt. The horde to which I was travelling was nearly three leagues diſtant; and to reach it we muſt have marched directly againſt the wind, which would not have been practicable.

I gave orders, therefore, for our departure. My baggage, which was now buried in ſand, was uncovered; the oxen were loaded, and we ſet off. But though we had the wind a little on one ſide of us, it greatly retarded our progreſs. My ſavages endeavoured in vain to drive the oxen in a direct line toward the mountains: the wind was ſo impetuous, that the poor beaſts, as well as ourſelves, in ſpite of all their efforts, gradually declined to leeward; ſo that our backs were frequently turned to the path we intended to purſue.

What I here relate will by no means ſurpriſe thoſe who have travelled in the ſouthern parts of Africa. They know the terrible effects of the ſouth-eaſt wind; and they are not ignorant, that, if certain diſtricts, and more eſpecially certain mountains, are deſtitute of every kind of vegetation, and conſequently uninha-

bitable, it is becauſe they are particularly expoſed to it.

At length, however, towards evening, it abated; the weather once more became calm, and we had a peaceful night. This reſpite was a real happineſs to us, and ſaved the lives of our cattle. The next morning before day-break we reſumed our march towards a Nimiqua horde, where we had ſcarcely arrived when the wind began again to blow as violently as ever.

When I approached the kraal, I was not a little ſurpriſed to find myſelf received as an old acquaintance. This ſurpriſe was renewed on my being told, that, about two months before, ſeveral of my people had come thither from my camp at Orange-River to purchaſe oxen; and that the chief had very lately ſent ſome of his horde to them to procure tobacco and hardware, which he ſhowed me, and which I perceived to have been mine.

It was not above a fortnight at moſt that theſe men had returned; and I learned from them news of Swanepoel and his comrades. After having expected me with impatience, they

they began to be uneaſy about me. However, the place, ſince my departure, was totally changed. The rains had covered the ground with verdure, and the banks of the river were every where embelliſhed with fine paſtures. Accordingly Swanepoel had ſent for the oxen I had left at Bernfry's horde, and had formed an encloſure for them, together with thoſe which he himſelf had purchaſed, and ſuch as I had bought on my way at different hordes, which had been faithfully conveyed to him according to the engagements of the venders.

The name of Bernfry, which now ſtruck my ear for the firſt time theſe four months, ſeemed to preſage ſome fatal news to me. My foreboding was too true. I was informed, that this abominable knave, enraged at my not having confided to him the ſuperintendance of my camp during my abſence, had revenged himſelf by the moſt flagitious conduct.

When Swanepoel went with ſome men to the neighbouring hordes to traffic for oxen, he had offered to accompany them under pretence of acting as a guide; and the reſult of theſe journeys was, that every thing bought for me was paid for at double its value, in conſe-

quence of his previous information to the ſellers.

Suppoſing me ſtill reſolved to return to Orange-River only to begin a new journey, and thinking that my plan would be rendered impracticable if I were in want of articles of trade, he had endeavoured to exhauſt my ſtore; and certainly, if circumſtances had not previouſly determined me to return to the Cape, this treacherous ſcheme was very capable of compelling me to do ſo.

To acquit myſelf of my debt to the Kaminouqua, whoſe ox I had killed a few days before, I now purchaſed one, and delivered it to him. His I diſtributed among the horde, as the haſte with which it was cut up had prevented us from taking the neceſſary precautions for keeping it.

The wind continued to blow for three whole days; and, as I had reſolved not to reſume my journey till it was completely abated, I remained at this place. This delay, however, was not loſt time to me; though the wind incommoded us much by the ſituation of the mountains on the declivity of which we were encamped, as from theſe it ruſhed down upon

us

us with violence. I went out ſeveral times with my gun, and with ſome ſucceſs; for I procured for my collection two charming ſpecies of animals with which I was before unacquainted.

One, of the ſquirrel genus, but longer and more ſlender than the Canadian ſquirrel deſcribed by Buffon, is a new ſpecies. It is iſabella-coloured on the back and ſides; the tail partly the ſame, partly white; the belly white; and it has a band of white alſo the whole length of the flank on each ſide. Its hair reſembles the quills of the porcupine rather than the fur of the ſquirrel. That on the tail, which is long and buſhy, has a degree of flexibility in conſequence of its length; but that on the body is hard and ſtiff, ſo much ſo, that, when ſtruck with a ſtick, the hairs give a kind of ruſtling ſound againſt each other, like the porcupine's quills. All the movements of the animal, like thoſe of the ſquirrel, are light and graceful; and like the ſquirrel alſo, when running, it ſpreads its fine tail. The Greater Nimiquas call it *aguimp*. I killed a male and female at one ſhot. The female differs only in being a little leſs, and having a colour more

approaching to grey. In my deſcription of the quadrupeds of Africa, I ſhall give a repreſentation of this pretty little animal.

The ſecond quadruped, which at that time was totally unknown to me, was a ſpecies of *viverra*; at leaſt ſo I judged it to be. My Hottentots of the colony all recognized it as a *muys-hond* (mouſe-dog), a general name among the inhabitants of the Cape for all the little carnivorous quadrupeds. They alſo aſſured me, that it was very common in many places in the colony; yet I do not recollect that I ever met with it there. Its body was the ſize of that of a kitten ſix months old: it had a very large noſe, the upper jaw exceeding the lower near two thirds of an inch in length, and forming a ſort of moveable ſnout, reſembling that of the coati of Guiana. The fore feet were armed with four large claws, very ſharp and curved; the hind ones have each five, but they are ſhort and blunt. All the fur on the upper part of the body is marked with croſs bands of a deep brown colour, on a ground of light brown with which many white hairs are intermixed. The lower part of the body and inſides of the legs are of a red-

a reddiſh white. The tail, which is very fleſhy, and more than two thirds longer than the body, is black at the tip, and the reſt brown, intermixed with white hairs.

This animal employs its fore paws to dig very deep holes in the earth, in which it remains concealed during the day, not going out till ſun-ſet in queſt of food.

In the ſame diſtrict I caught a very ſingular bat, which one evening entered my tent, and extinguiſhed my candle by endeavouring to perch on it. This ſpecies has a ſufficient claim to the title of *oreillar*, for it has four ears, or at leaſt the external part of four ears, each ear being double; the outer fold, which ſerves as a covering to the inner, is very ample, being two inches eight lines high, and nearly as broad when ſtretched out. On the noſe alſo a membrane ſtands erect, one inch four lines in height, which might be taken for another ear, as it has exactly the ſhape of one. This membrane, as well as the ears and wings of the animal, are of a ruſty red, paler below than above. The body is only three inches long, and is covered with very fine greyiſh hair. Its width, from the tip of one wing to that of the other,

is eight inches. The reader will pardon me for inſerting theſe triflling details of meaſurement, of which I am not more fond than himſelf; but they appeared to me neceſſary here, to convey an accurate idea of the extraordinary length of the ears of this animal, which are certainly larger in proportion than thoſe of any other we are acquainted with, ſince they are only four lines * ſhorter than the body itſelf.

When the wind had entirely ſubſided, the wild animals, and particularly the iſabella-coloured zebras, re-appeared in the plain. I had long been very eager to procure one of theſe, but, notwithſtanding all my efforts, had never been able to ſucceed. I again employed a whole day in hunting them, and even chaſed them to the diſtance of more than ſeven leagues from the horde; but I found it impoſſible to overtake them, and, after a great deal of uſeleſs fatigue, was obliged to relinquiſh the purſuit.

This wild animal, which will not ſuffer itſelf to be approached, is the only one I ſaw in Africa, a few birds of lofty flight excepted, that I was unable to procure. Never having had it in my poſſeſſion, I can ſay no more of it than what I have already written, and I ſhall

* The French divide the inch into twelve lines. T.

continue

continue to give it the name of iſabella zebra, till ſome more fortunate traveller may beſtow on it another appellation.

I did not quit the horde without taking guides. They conducted me, by a journey of ſeven or eight leagues, to the dry bed of a periodical river, on the banks of which they left me, and which they aſſured me was that Lion-River, which I had croſſed farther to the eaſt at my firſt departure. If it be difficult in Africa to be certain of the courſe of a flowing river, it is ſtill more ſo to aſcertain that of one that is dry. I have truſted to the ſavages for the name of this, and I have laid it down in my map on their authority. I much doubt, however, its being the ſame river: but it may poſſibly be another to which the appellation of Lion has been given; as, in fact, in that part of Africa there are many brooks or rivers that bear this denomination. Beſides, it is enough for a planter to meet with a lion, an elephant, a buffalo, or any other animal, on the bank of a river, to give it immediately its name. Thus it is we find at the Cape of Good Hope ſeveral Elephant-Rivers, Buffalo-Rivers, and Lion-Rivers, as well as many

Zout-

Zout-Rivieren (Salt-Rivers), and the like; which may eaſily lead to geographical errors, particularly in ſo mountainous a country, where it is impoſſible to follow a river along its banks through its whole courſe.

From the banks of the one in queſtion, we proceeded the ſhorteſt way to Orange-River. It was midnight when we arrived at it; but the joy of having at length reached the river on the borders of which my camp was pitched, diffuſed throughout my caravan a ſort of delirious ecſtacy, which continued till dawn and prevented us from taking the ſmalleſt repoſe. Nothing was talked of but the moment of arrival. Had I liſtened to the general voice of impatience, I ſhould have departed inſtantly. Already they thought themſelves within a few ſteps of the camp; yet we had ſtill a long way to travel thither, though we had nothing to do but to aſcend the river keeping along its banks.

The great number of trees and buſhes by the river's ſide obliged my caravan to keep at a little diſtance from it; while I and my hunters, in the hope of killing ſome hippopotamuſes, never quitted it—ſome proceeding along the right bank, others along the left.

March-

Marching in this order, we encamped twice. At length, on the third day, the Greater Nimiquas, finding they were near their horde, aſked leave to quit me. Certain, however, that it would give them pleaſure, I reſolved to accompany them, and return them as it were myſelf into the hands of their comrades.

This was not all. Curious to know the effect that the ſurpriſe of our return would produce in the kraal, I prohibited any one from advancing to announce me; and in fact they were ſo far from expecting us, and our arrival was ſo ſudden, that when they ſaw us they were all ſtruck dumb with aſtoniſhment.

To this motionleſs ſurpriſe ſucceeded cries and ſhouts, with jumping, ſkipping, and all thoſe irregular movements with which ſavages uſually expreſs the tranſports of joy. The whole kraal was ſoon in confuſion; every one congratulated himſelf on finding again comrades, friends, relations, whom he had believed to be loſt, and deſpaired of ever ſeeing more. They were hugged and ſmothered with careſſes; while, confeſſing in their ſimplicity that I had led them to the world's end, they heightened

ened the general intoxication, by relating the marvels they had witneſſed.

Their narrative was ſo intereſting, that it brought the whole crowd around them. Interrupted every moment by twenty different perſons with as many different queſtions, they reſumed their diſcourſe, added, exaggerated, confounded circumſtances and adventures together, and rendered their tale ſo confuſed, that it excited univerſal rapture from the very circumſtance of its being incomprehenſible.

This continued the whole day, and was interrupted only by the noiſy diverſions of the night. I could ſcarcely hope to enjoy the refreſhment of ſleep in the midſt of people whoſe tumultuous uproar is always proportionate to the pleaſure they feel, and among whom a feſtival has the appearance of an alarm and battle. Without attempting, therefore, to retire to my tent, I remained among them, and thought only of enjoying the ſpectacle it exhibited.

The narrators of what they had ſeen particularly engaged my attention. Knowing enough of the language to underſtand them, they amuſed me extremely. Though they related

related only events that were known to me, their uncultivated minds interlarded them with ſuch extraordinary remarks and circumſtances, embelliſhed them with ſuch ſublime and extravagant poetical figures, and gave them ſuch a new and whimſical air, that I fancied myſelf liſtening to fabulous narrations. Never before had I taſted a ſimilar pleaſure, and I frankly confeſs that this was one of the moſt pleaſing nights that either of my journeys afforded.

At ſun-riſe, when every one retired to ſleep, I took my gun, and went to try my ſucceſs in the neighbourhood. I found nothing to add to my collection; but chance afforded me an extraordinary ſhot, ſuch as perhaps no other ſportſman can boaſt.

I was ſitting at the foot of a tree, with my double-barrelled gun between my legs ſtraight before me, the butt-end reſting on the ground, and my finger on the trigger. In the other hand I held a leaf, on the edge of which I was whiſtling in the manner of fowlers when they wiſh to draw round them ſmall birds. A ſpecies of red-breaſt came and pitched boldly on my hat, thence hopped to the mouth of my fuſee, and, ſetting one foot on each barrel, re-

mained motionleſs, liſtening to the muſic of my leaf, which was altogether new to him.

In deſert countries, an animal that has never beheld a human being ſees one for the firſt time without alarm, particularly if the individual it perceives be in a ſtate of reſt and do not move.

Whatever might have been the motive of the bird's familiarity, its boldneſs ſo ſurpriſed me, that, mechanically and without reflection, I pulled the trigger, and the gun went off. I ſuppoſed the bird would have been torn in a thouſand pieces: but, to my great aſtoniſhment, I ſaw it carried up thirty feet above my head, in an almoſt perpendicular direction, and fall a few paces from me.

I ran to pick it up. The ends of its quill feathers were a little ſcorched, and it appeared panting and extremely frightened; but by degrees it recovered, and, after I had ſatisfied myſelf that it had received no wound, I gave it its liberty, and it flew away without appearing to be in the leaſt injured. It is probable that the column of air which filled the barrel, being driven out by the exploſion, firſt ſtruck the bird, which, by a ſingle motion of its wings,

wings, was thrown out of the line of direction of the ſhot, which paſſed in a body without touching it, while the fire, occupying a larger ſpace, ſcorched the ends of its wings and tail.

The oxen which I had hired of the horde becoming uſeleſs to me, as my effects were conſiderably diminiſhed, and I was but a day's journey from my camp, I returned them to their owners, inviting them to come in a few days, when their rejoicings were ended, to aſk and receive the reward of their ſervices.

Theſe ſervices were certainly ſmall, as has been ſeen above; and, ſo far from congratulating myſelf on having ſuch travelling companions, I had wiſhed a thouſand times to be rid of them. But periods arrive when every thing is forgotten. Theſe men, whoſe cowardice and indolence had irritated me ſo much, appeared no longer the ſame when they were no longer neceſſary to me. I ſaw them with other eyes, and framed excuſes at my own expence for their conduct.

How, after all, could I expect, that they ſhould enter into my paſſion for a ſcience of which they had not the ſlighteſt notion? Tranquil both by conſtitution and by habit, unenſlaved

enſlaved to fantaſtic deſires, they could not participate in my follies. How often, while I refuſed to copy their wiſdom, have I recollected with regret the moments which, dupe to the ſpecious promiſes of men and their perfidious lies, I have painfully waſted in endeavouring to ſerve them! How often have I reſolved never again to exchange my repoſe, and its unambitious pleaſures, for their artificial and inſipid praiſes, for the ſmoke of that incenſe, which, ſo to ſay, you at laſt contrive that they ſhall blow in your face!

After having beſtowed ſome preſents on the women and children of the horde, I returned to the river with my party, and we continued to proceed along its courſe. Though this journey was through places which every one of us had traverſed a hundred times, no one recollected them, ſo brilliant an appearance had the change of the ſeaſon and the re-aſcent of the ſap given to what at our departure wore the moſt ſterile aſpect.

It is not improbable that we ſhould have paſſed the camp without knowing it, particularly as it was ſituated behind the trees on the other bank, ſo as to be concealed from our view; but

at

at length, when arrived oppoſite to it, we diſcovered where we were by the tomb of the Kaminouqua whom the lion had devoured.

On ſeeing the termination of ſo varied an excurſion, my people could not contain their joy. They ſhouted aloud to inform their comrades of their arrival, and at the ſame time I ordered a diſcharge of all our muſketry. This double ſignal was heard, and anſwered by ſimilar howlings. In a moment I ſaw the whole party of the Hottentots of the camp run to the river, leap into the water, and ſwim acroſs, to expreſs their joy at my return, and embrace their friends. The uproar was preciſely ſimilar to that which I had witneſſed the day before.

Swanepoel alone remained on the bank. Too old and too heavy to ſwim, he ſtretched out his arms toward us, and called to ſome of my people to convey him over on the raft. Amid the general joy and ſurpriſe no one had thought of him. At length, however, they complied with his requeſt; and the old man, throwing himſelf into my arms with tears in his eyes, informed me of all the uneaſineſs he had undergone in my abſence.

Theſe four months had been an age to him; and, though I had told him to wait for me five or ſix, he had been in doubt whether he ought not to return to the Namero; particularly as the ſavages who conducted to the camp the oxen I bought on the road had told him, that, with the friendly manners I had the art of employing, I might proceed ſo far into the country that, perhaps, he would never hear of me again.

We were much altered, he ſaid, and fallen away; which, conſidering the exceſſive fatigues we had undergone, by no means ſurpriſed me. Scorched all day by a fervid ſun, obliged continually to march over rocks or ſands, ſleeping at night on a ſimple mat, and having uſually nothing but brackiſh water to drink, I certainly did not lead the life of a *ſatrap*, whatever may be ſaid; at the ſame time I do not regret the hardſhips I experienced. Indeed, notwithſtanding my thinneſs, I never enjoyed better health.

I croſſed the river on the raft, and found myſelf at laſt in the midſt of my real and proper camp. This moment was delightful to me. I ſeemed returned to take poſſeſſion of my

my eſtate after a long baniſhment. The dogs I had left behind knew me. They jumped about me with eagerneſs, and beſtowed on me a thouſand careſſes.

On ſuch occaſions the mereſt trifles afford pleaſure. During my abſence, Swanepoel had ſuffered the hen to ſit upon her eggs, and ſhe had now ſixteen chickens of a tolerable ſize. The dogs I brought with me, not being uſed to theſe birds, ſprung on them, and killed three at the firſt onſet. The hen, and, which was ſurpriſing, the cock alſo, engaged in defence of the brood, which gave us time to come to their aſſiſtance. In our poultry yards we never ſee cocks in ſuch caſes defend their hens, and ſtill leſs do they concern themſelves about the chickens: was it then that mine, having but one female, was naturally more attached to her, and, for the ſame reaſon, never having ſeen any other cock careſs his companion, loved her the more, and was more fond of her young? Be that as it may, we obſerve all wild birds in general, and which have but one female, obſtinately defend her, and take the greateſt care of their young; while in the domeſtic ſtate, in which we leave a num-

ber of hens to aſſociate in common with ſeveral cocks, the ſame attachment to the female is not diſplayed, and ſtill leſs to the young ſhe may bring forth. Whether the cock in the wild ſtate have ſeveral hens, is a circumſtance with which we are unacquainted. Sonnerat, to whom natural hiſtory is greatly indebted, brought from India a wild cock and hen, which he ſuppoſes to be of the original ſpecies, whence our domeſtic ones ſprung; but he gives us no information reſpecting the manners of theſe birds. In Africa I found neither the ſpecies nor genus of our domeſtic fowls, at leaſt in a ſtate of nature; though I have ſeen, in ſeveral collections in Europe, wild cocks and hens altogether different from thoſe brought over by Sonnerat, and forming diſtinct ſpecies. I ſhall give figures of them in my ornithology.

One of my firſt cares was to go and examine the ſkin of my giraffe. It had coſt me too much trouble to allow me to be indifferent about its preſervation. Having been ſix months expoſed on a ſcaffold, I had reaſon to fear its being damaged. I approached it trembling; but joy ſoon ſucceeded to my anxiety,

anxiety, when I ſaw it completely dried, and in a ſtate of perfect preſervation.

It would have been, perhaps, more in the order of things to have viſited my cattle before the giraffe, ſince they, in reality, were of the moſt conſequence to me; yet they had only the ſecond place in my care. They were feeding in the environs, where the paſturage was fine. Some goats had kidded; but all my old oxen, one after another, had died, five excepted, which were ſtill in a weak and exhauſted ſtate, though labouring under no diſeaſe. Notwithſtanding all the pains Swanepoel had taken to purchaſe others, he had been able to procure no more than ſeventeen oxen and three bulls, which fortunately were in good condition.

During theſe different examinations, I had perceived among the people in my ſervice ſome thirty new faces. I ſaw alſo at a little diſtance from the camp a certain number of ſtrange huts. On demanding an explanation of this, I was told, that part of the ſtrangers were ſavages from the neighbouring hordes ſent to procure tobacco. The huts had been erected by other ſavages, who had come to ſettle under the protection of Swanepoel, to

be ſecure from the attacks of the Boſhmen, and had formed a little kraal near the camp.

And thus it is that in the infancy of nations towns are formed. A few feeble individuals ſeek an aſylum near the ſtrong. By degrees the ſociety increaſes; trade draws ſtrangers to it; and, as it augments in number, wealth, and ſtrength, it inſenſibly becomes a people, and adopts a form of government. Into this ſnare their happineſs frequently falls a ſacrifice.

The news of my arrival having reached the horde of Bernfry, he forgot the complaints I had againſt him, and came to pay me a viſit. Meeting, however, with a very unwelcome reception both from Swanepoel and me, he liſtened to us for a while without a word of reply, and then turned his back upon us; which pleaſed me, as I hoped, by this unſucceſsful attempt, I ſhould be delivered in future from his knaviſh tricks.

In the different excurſions that Swanepoel and Klaas Baſter had made to procure oxen, they had killed a large monkey, of a peculiar ſpecies, the ſkin of which they had perfectly preſerved, following the method which they had ſeen me employ. This animal, two feet

and

BOMBAY
MUSEUM

THE BLACK APE.

and half high, is covered with dark-brown hair as ſtiff as that of a hog. Its eyes, ſituated very high, and level with the ſurface, give its face a totally different appearance from that of other monkeys. Swanepoel informed me, that he had killed this among a very conſiderable number of the ſame ſpecies, ſome of which appeared to him much larger.

My people had been hitherto employed, ſince my arrival, in unloading the oxen of the caravan, and tranſporting my baggage acroſs the river on the raft. The moſt important buſineſs remained ſtill to be performed, that of conducting to the camp the oxen themſelves. They had hoped to make them paſs the river by ſwimming; but as the oxen had never ſeen a river ſo broad, they were terrified at the paſſage, and all refuſed to attempt it. To no purpoſe did they ſend ſome of my herd into the water before them, to encourage them by their example, and employ every poſſible means, even to blows; they ſtill reſiſted. At length, as night drew on, they reſolved to try what appeared the laſt reſource.

A little higher up the river was a holme, which divided it into two branches; and it

might be preſumed, that the animals, obſerving a ſmaller ſpace of water, would be leſs afraid, and venture to ſwim acroſs. At leaſt ſo we flattered ourſelves; and, accordingly, I ordered them to be driven to the place, with a ſufficient number of men to guard them during the night, and orders to attempt the paſſage at ſunriſe.

Having made this arrangement, I thought every neceſſary precaution taken, and accordingly retired to reſt, in my waggon, with a mind devoid of anxiety. I was faſt aſleep there in the utmoſt tranquillity, when Klaas came haſtily to waken me, and deſire me to riſe without delay.

My firſt thought was, that he was eager to inform me of the paſſage of my cattle; and I aſked whether it had been attended with much difficulty. "That," ſaid he, "is not the buſineſs; all is loſt. The keepers fell aſleep "in the night, and let out their fires. The "Boſhmen, who were on the watch, took advantage of their ſleep to drive off the whole "herd. By chance one of the ſleepers awoke, "and, perceiving the robbery, called to "arms. They all ran after the marauders, "but

" but theſe were ſo numerous, and their rear-
" guard, which covered the march of the reſt,
" let fly at them ſo many arrows, that our
" people, after a few diſcharges of their muſ-
" kets, returned, bringing back only three of
" the oxen that lagged behind, and had been
" very ſeverely handled. We have but one
" reſource left, which is to purſue the robbers
" with a ſtrong party: but then we muſt ſet
" off without delay, and not loſe a moment."

Circumſtanced as I was, this accident was extremely vexatious to me; not merely from the great loſs it occaſioned, but becauſe, by taking from me the cattle intended to recruit my teams, it deprived me of the means of returning to the Cape.

The news had ſcarcely reached my camp, when the ſuſpicions of my people fell upon the Houzouanas, againſt whom they were ſtill prejudiced. According to them, theſe plunderers alone were to be charged with it, who, after inſidious inſtances of ſervice, had, in their opinion, followed our track, and availed themſelves of the moment of my abſence to carry off what I was not at hand to defend.

I could not credit theſe accuſations; and the event

event proved them to be unfounded. But I had no inclination to waſte my time in confuting them. It was of little conſequence to me to know who had committed the theft; my buſineſs was to recover the booty, and this was to be done only by following the advice of Klaas.

I iſſued my orders in conſequence. Uncertain of the time the expedition might require, though aſſured it could not ſucceed without great celerity, I loaded an ox with my marquee, my cloak, ſome ammunition, the kroſſes of the men who were to attend me, and two ſheep, which we killed and ſkinned.

My detachment conſiſted of the faithful Klaas, four of my braveſt hunters, of whom Baſter was one, and eight Hottentots armed with bows and arrows. Klaas was armed at all points like myſelf, and like me alſo was on horſeback. I took with me, beſides, a part of my pack, not omitting my great dog Yager.

We ſoon croſſed the river and reached the keepers. They appeared ſo confounded at ſeeing me, that, if I had had time to reprimand them

them for their negligence, the ſhame and ſorrow they felt would not have left me the heart to do it. Beſides, there were Kaminouquas among them, who, having lent me their oxen on hire for the journey, had loſt them by the robbery, as I had mine.

Theſe men requeſted permiſſion to attend me, that their own concerns might not be neglected. To this I conſented; and I ordered the reſt to repair to the camp, with the three oxen they had recovered, in the beſt manner they could.

We could not miſtake our road, as it was traced on the ſand by the footſteps of our animals, which we followed for ſix full hours, going up the banks of the river. At length they appeared to ſtrike off from the river at an angle, in order to penetrate into the country.

Here the approach of night determined me to ſtop. I ordered fires to be lighted, and ſome neceſſary precautions taken to prevent ſurpriſe, and in the mean time I proceeded with Klaas to reconnoitre the track, and make myſelf certain of its direction.

After about half an hour's ride, we perceived

ceived that the herd had been divided, one part turning off due eaſt, the other continuing to advance to the north. The latter being the more conſiderable, we reſolved to make that our purſuit, and, the ſooner to overtake it, to reſume our journey before day. This plan being fixed, we returned to the halting-place; and, after a very peaceable night, ſet off, in fact, two hours before ſunriſe.

Though we could not ſee the track becauſe of the darkneſs, I flattered myſelf, that, by travelling northerly, I ſhould not miſs it; and, if I did miſs it, it could not much ſignify, as we might ſoon find it again, and without difficulty. We made, however, no miſtake; for, when day broke, we found ourſelves following preciſely its direction; but, after travelling four long leagues, I perceived it viſibly to bend to the right, as if to rejoin the diviſion which had turned off to the eaſt. Baſter, who had traverſed this diſtrict in my abſence, told me he knew where he was, and that a very little way off was a horde of Kaminouquas, which he had viſited for the purpoſe of trade.

From what he ſaid of the ſituation of this horde, I found that it was between the

the two tracks. My companions, more diſtruſtful, thought they both terminated there, and that the Kaminouquas were conſequently the thieves.

I could not eaſily ſuſpect a nation, which, in all its dealings with me and all its tradings at the camp, had uniformly ſhown itſelf juſt and true. Beſides, by proceeding to the kraal as my people propoſed, I ſhould quit the track, and perhaps loſe a portion of time that was very valuable. However, as all my company were unanimous for this digreſſion, I at laſt yielded to the general opinion, and we repaired ſtraight to the horde.

I had not been miſtaken in my good opinion of it. The moment I reached it, I perceived by the ſerenity of the countenances of the ſavages, and the friendly manner in which they accoſted me, that my companions were wrong in their ſuſpicions. Of this they were ſoon convinced themſelves, and were not backward to avow their error.

We here, however, gained intelligence of the ſtolen herd. One of the ſavages had ſeen it paſs by the evening before, eſcorted by a great number of men, who ſeemed proceeding

ing towards the river, on the other ſide of which they probably dwelt. Two perſons voluntarily offered to point out their track, and be my guides acroſs the river to the place in queſtion. This offer I accepted; but, alas! I was little aware to what a cruel fate they would be expoſed by their generous ſervices.

Meanwhile, as to myſelf, it was fortunate for me that I viſited the horde; for the ox that carried my baggage was ſo exhauſted with fatigue, as to be almoſt incapable of going any farther. I therefore hired two others to ſupply his place. I alſo added two freſh ſheep to our proviſion; and we ſpeedily departed.

We were obliged to travel four leagues eaſt by north before we re-diſcovered the track. It then appeared again, and led us to the banks of Orange-River, where it terminated. At this place, therefore, the robbers muſt have croſſed the river with their booty. The fact I thought unqueſtionable; yet my two Kaminouqua guides ſwam over to be certain of it.

As I had no doubt, from the information I had received, but the Boſhmen of whom I was

in queſt dwelt on that ſide, I thought it prudent to leave the ſtream between them and me, and to ſpend the night where I was. We had travelled, during the day, thirteen leagues, without any where ſtopping, except at the kraal; and of courſe we wanted reſt. Our two guides, after they had diſcovered the track and followed it for the ſpace of two hours returned; but, when arrived at the river, they ſaw, floating on the water, a drowned ox, which they puſhed forward, and drove aſhore near where we were encamped. Upon examining, I found it to be one of mine, for it had my mark; and Klaas, beſides, inſtantly knew it.

During the night I was buſied on the means of paſſing the river. I had obſerved it no where ſo broad and rapid, and it was an artful trick of theſe robbers to chooſe, for croſſing it, the moſt difficult and dangerous ſituation.

What particularly aſtoniſhed me was, that they had ſucceeded in driving over the cattle, while my people could not even get them into the water at a place where it was two thirds narrower. This thought increaſed my rage; and, to confeſs the truth, I had need of ſome ſuch motive to animate me againſt the plun-

derers,

derers, as I ſhould otherwiſe have been ſtaggered by the difficulty of the paſſage, which would have induced me to return and relinquiſh the purſuit.

Though exaſperated, I was not, however, blind to the danger; and, in ſome degree to diminiſh it, I proceeded farther up the river, and croſſed it where its bed was much leſs wide. I had no room to fear going out of the way by this proceeding; for, beſides that the drowned ox convinced me that the Boſhmen were higher up, my guides, who had reconnoitred the track the day before, could not fail of putting me into it.

In fact, we eaſily found it again, and purſued it anew for the ſpace of five leagues, when my Kaminouquas ſuddenly ſtopped as if thunderſtruck; for the footſteps, inſtead of continuing to tend towards the horde they had ſuſpected, turned off at an angle, and were directed a ſecond time to the river.

This new diſappointment put us all to a ſtand. The ſurpriſe was general; and we looked at one another for ſome time without ſpeaking a word. Our guides, forced to acknowledge the innocence of the horde they had

had accuſed, now turned their ſuſpicions to another that reſided five leagues from the river, on the ſide we had quitted; and, in fact, every footſtep pointed to the river, not one from it.

So many contradictions ſeemed created on purpoſe to diſcourage me; yet had they no other effect than to provoke and animate me the more. Accordingly we paſſed the river a third time, and, after ſtopping to take ſome refreſhment, reſumed our purſuit of the track, which at firſt, for the ſpace of a league, led us north-weſt, and then approached Orange-River once more by a large circuit, which brought us nearly back to the place where we had croſſed it the preceding evening.

Thus, after various turnings and windings, after three days' toilſome travelling, we were obliged to paſs the river a fourth time. To deceive and miſlead me with reſpect to their courſe, the plunderers, with artful and deep-laid contrivance, had croſſed it themſelves three times; and thereby led me, by forced marches and countermarches, to a conſiderable diſtance after a horde which lived ſcarcely more than

eighteen or twenty leagues from my camp, and on the ſame ſide of the river.

Certainly, had I known theſe circumſtances, I might have ſaved myſelf much pain and labour: but how could I divine them? And who, in my place, would not have been equally deceived? My guides themſelves, confounded at ſo much art, were afraid I ſhould not believe them, but ſuſpect them of favouring the thieves, and aſſiſting them to put their booty in a ſtate of ſecurity, by making me loſe ſo much valuable time. To convince me of their good faith, they would in every inſtance paſs the river before me, and ſatisfy themſelves that the footſteps actually re-appeared, before they would adviſe me to follow them.

This laſt paſſage had nearly coſt me my life. I attempted it as uſual on horſeback, while two ſwimmers conducted the horſe by the bridle. About the middle of the river, one of the rings of the bit gave way. Finding himſelf incommoded by the other, he jerked his head ſo violently as to make the ſecond ſwimmer let go his hold; and the horſe was accordingly at the mercy of the ſtream. As I had no means of

command-

commanding him, I ſtooped forward over his neck, and endeavoured to guide him, by patting him with my hand. But to ſwim as I wiſhed him required ſtrength, and of this his journey had totally deprived him; ſo that he drove with the current for more than a quarter of an hour, without making any effort but what was abſolutely neceſſary to keep him above water.

Luckily for me, the current, by which we were in danger of drowning, drove him to the bank, but ſo exhauſted with fatigue that he could not ſtand. My people, who ran to my aſſiſtance, endeavoured in vain to ſet him upon his feet: all their efforts were to no purpoſe; he was perfectly unable to riſe, and abſolutely lay on the place the remainder of the day and all the night.

To allow him the more time to recover, I did not ſet off till late in the morning. We again followed the track of our cattle, which led us caſtward for four leagues, when we fell into a path that conducted to the horde. In this path terminated the footſteps of our oxen, all of which had aſſembled together in this place; ſo that we had no doubt but the people of this horde were the robbers.

My two Kaminouqua guides requeſted me to excuſe their accompanying me any farther. They were afraid, if they proceeded with us, they might be known, and that, ſuſpected of having conducted me to the horde, a war between the two nations would be the conſequence. Their fear was well founded, and their caution ſufficiently reaſonable. Seeing, therefore, nothing but what was juſt in their requeſt, unfortunately for them I complied with it. It was agreed that they ſhould continue where we then were, and there await our return. However, as it would not have been prudent to advance in broad day and expoſe ourſelves too openly, I reſolved to wait till night. Dark as it might prove, the path was too much trodden for us to be in any danger of loſing our way.

We ſet off at two in the morning with the profoundeſt ſilence, and ſoon perceived the light of ſeveral fires, which my people ſuppoſed to be about three-quarters of a league diſtant. On advancing farther, we heard ſongs, ſhouts of joy, and immoderate laughter. The robbers were diverting themſelves and feaſting at my expence.

Their

Their noiſineſs, however, had one good effect. My dogs, on approaching them, began to bark ſo loudly, that we thought proper to muzzle them; and, but for the uproar that drowned their voices, they would infallibly have betrayed us. And now behold me for the firſt time in my life in a ſtate of war with a ſavage horde, and determined to carry it on with art, if I found myſelf oppoſed by a ſuperior force!

As it was no favourable moment for the attack, I deferred it till break of day; and, that it might be conducted in the moſt advantageous manner, I intrenched both myſelf and my troop behind a thick patch of bruſhwood, which afforded us a ſecure rampart againſt the offenſive weapons of our enemies, and rendered ours ſtill more formidable.

The buſh was large enough to contain and ſhelter all my fuſileers, and each of us, by ſeparating a few branches, made a ſort of loop-hole, through which he could preſent the mouth of his piece and fire.

In this ſituation, we waited patiently and in ſilence for the moment of attack. The knaves themſelves ſeemed to favour us by their con-

duct. Their obſtreperous joy ſubſided by degrees; and at length, giving way to fatigue, they withdrew into their huts to ſleep, and the noiſe ceaſed altogether.

Day appeared, to the ſatisfaction of my impatience, which I could ſcarce reſtrain. But I then perceived that we had badly calculated our diſtance. Our poſt was ſo far from the kraal, that our ſhot would hardly reach it. We were obliged, therefore, to quit the buſh, and approach nearer the huts: but we left our two oxen and my two horſes ſheltered by it, with a man to take care of them, that they might be ready for my uſe if we experienced a check.

Certain that all the people of the kraal were faſt aſleep, we advanced openly, and took poſt in front of it within gun-ſhot. The kraal was of conſiderable ſize, appearing to contain about thirty or forty huts. It was built on the ſide of a hill, about half way up its acclivity, and behind it a range of lofty mountains aroſe like an amphitheatre.

All our guns were loaded, which I thought a neceſſary precaution: yet it was not my intention to commence hoſtilities by the effuſion of

of blood. I was deſirous of alarming the robbers only, and putting them to flight, by the terror of a ſudden and unexpected attack. In conſequence, I enjoined my people to fire into the air, and poſitively forbad them to aim at a ſingle man, unleſs we were obliged to do ſo, and I ſhould give expreſs orders to that purpoſe.

I began the attack by firing my large carbine, the report of which, re-echoed by the neighbouring mountains, produced a thundering noiſe. We expected that the whole horde would run away affrighted at the ſound; and my people prepared to heighten the general terror by a diſcharge of their muſketry. To our great aſtoniſhment, however, not a ſingle perſon appeared. I ordered ſeveral other diſcharges of our guns, but in vain; every thing ſtill continued quiet, and I was at a loſs what to augur from the circumſtance.

This ſecurity was but apparent. While every thing without indicated ſleep and tranquillity, within all was confuſion and affright. But by an infernal ſtratagem, in which my robbers no doubt had long been practiſed, no one would ſhew himſelf till all were in a ſtate

of defence. Probably they had a ſignal to inform each other on ſuch occaſions when they were ready.

When armed, all, ſuddenly and at the ſame inſtant, iſſued from their huts, advanced towards us with fearful yells, and diſcharged a flight of arrows, which fell ſhort, as we were out of their reach, and which we returned by a diſcharge of our pieces, ſtill firing over their huts.

The ſavages, finding that no one was wounded, ſuppoſed that my ſhot could not injure them. They accordingly all joined, and advanced againſt us with fury. I waited their approach without moving. My people, in the mean time, cried out to them to reſtore my oxen. Whether they heard us amid the general noiſe, I am ignorant; but, being arrived within bow-ſhot, they ſent us another flight of arrows, which now fell every where around us.

Thinking that it was no longer time to dally and content myſelf with empty noiſe, I ordered my men to fire at their antagoniſts; and, our diſcharges ſucceeding alternately, we ſoon ſaw the troop diſperſing like ants, each running his own way, with yells which

were

were not, like the former, ſignals of battle and the expreſſion of intrepidity, but the cries of deſpair.

Soon, however, they rallied; and I ſaw them even gain the ſummit of the hill, collect my cattle that were ſcattered about upon it, and diſappear with them. Their women and children had already repaired thither during the engagement, ſo that the ſhadow of an enemy was no longer to be ſeen.

The moſt vexatious circumſtance that could happen to me at ſuch a juncture was this retreat, which a ſecond time deprived me of my cattle. Where would have been the uſe of all the labour and fatigue that for ſome days I had undergone, if, without reſource, they were taken from me anew? Not a moment was to be loſt. Should the troop reach the defiles of the mountains with them, their recovery would be impoſſible, and they would be gone for ever.

I ſent, therefore, for my two horſes, which were behind the buſh, and diſpatching three of my markſmen to intercept the herd and its conductors on one ſide, I galloped away with Klaas to cut off their retreat on the other.

I ſoon

I ſoon perceived the ſavages deſcending the back of the hill, and endeavouring to reach a plain, in which was a wood. On ſeeing us, they redoubled their ſpeed, and diſappeared a ſecond time: but thoſe who drove the cattle, unable to make them proceed as faſt as they wiſhed, on account of the deſcent, and finding themſelves in danger of being ſurrounded, quitted the herd, and ran to join their comrades.

Their flight was accelerated by the arrival of my three markſmen, who came near enough to fire at and kill one of them. In the mean time I arrived with Klaas by the other route of the circle, and thus we got poſſeſſion of the cattle.

It was nevertheleſs poſſible, that the fugitives, recovering from their firſt ſurpriſe, might be aſhamed of having fled before a few men, whom they twenty times out-numbered, and return to attack us in force. Beſides, if they wanted courage, they were not unſkilled in wiles and ſtratagems; and they might thereby haraſs our retreat, and gradually deprive us of the fruit of our victory. Without a moment's delay, therefore, I poſted two men on the hill to watch their movements, and obſerve whether

ther they came out of the wood, while I proceeded to the kraal to rejoin the reſt of my troop, having the herd driven before me.

Either by the extreme fatigue of the forced march they had been compelled to make, or by wounds from the aſſagays with which they had been driven on, almoſt all the cattle were lamed. However, it was a happineſs to us to recover them in any condition. The Kaminouquas knew theirs, which were all complete in point of number, as alſo were mine, the ox excepted which was drowned in the river, and my war-ox. This fine animal had been killed for the feaſt, and we found his head on the ground near the kraal.

The cattle of the horde were in their encloſure, ſo that it was in my power to have avenged myſelf according to the law of retaliation by taking them all away; to which the people in their anger adviſed me. Such conduct, in their opinion, was perfectly juſt; and the planters at the Cape never fail ſo to act on ſimilar occaſions. But this was not conformable to my principles. As an indemnification for my loſs, I contented myſelf with a young cow, which had juſt calved, and two fat ſheep—leſs as an equivalent for what they had

had ſtolen, than to give them a ſtriking proof of my moderation and ſcrupulous equity.

Having inflicted this puniſhment, I called in my ſentinels, and prepared to depart. Being obliged to paſs through the long narrow path by which we came, I had many precautions to take to avoid an ambuſcade and repriſals; and theſe were the more neceſſary, becauſe the oxen could travel but ſlowly on account of their wounds, and were forced to proceed in a line one after another. I ſent Klaas with two fuſileers at the head of the detachment, while I formed myſelf with the reſt of the troop the rear guard; and in this order we reached the plain.

I expected to find the two Kaminouqua guides in the place where we had left them the day before; but when we drew near, I heard a lamentable yelling at the head of my troop, which chilled me with horror. I immediately haſtened thither; and my eyes were preſented with ſo frightful a ſpectacle, that the hideous idea of it makes me ſtill ſhudder as I write. The two unfortunate ſavages, who had ſo generouſly offered themſelves as my guides, were lying on the ground, nearly dead, and weltering in their blood.

My firſt thought was, that they had been diſcovered by ſome of the horde, and ſacrificed to their ſuſpicion; but, on approaching nearer, I was quickly undeceived. The lower jaw of one was bruiſed, broken, and almoſt all torn away. The fragments that ſtill remained, and his tongue which was expoſed to view, hung bleeding on his neck and breaſt. He was abſolutely dying, and afforded no other ſign of life than the beating of his pulſe. But the prodigious ſwelling of his head, the dreadful alteration of his face, and the ſtarting of the eyes from their orbits, had ſo diſfigured him, that he no longer retained a human countenance, and exhibited a ſight that while it rended my heart was diſguſting to behold.

His comrade had many bites or lacerations on the body, and one arm broken, or rather ground to pieces, in two places. His condition, however, was by no means ſo bad as the other, and he could even ſpeak.

We interrogated him reſpecting the cauſe of their diſaſter, and he informed us, that, after we had left him, they had extinguiſhed their fire, that they might not be diſcovered by the Boſhmen; and having fallen aſleep at a little

a little diſtance from each other, he was preſently awaked by the cries of his companion. Inſtantly running to his aſſiſtance, he found him ſtruggling in the paws of a lion, which he ſtruck in the flank with his aſſagay. The animal, finding himſelf wounded, then turned upon him, and reduced him before he fled to the condition in which we ſaw him.

This melancholy narrative grieved and terrified me; and my diſtreſs was rendered more acute by the reflection, that I was myſelf the innocent cauſe of their death by having accepted their ſervices. How much did I then lament, that I had no other aſſiſtance to offer to theſe poor expiring wretches, than that of ending their ſufferings by diſpatching them on the ſpot!

To this barbarous action, however, I felt, with regard to one of them, extreme repugnance. I therefore tore my ſhirt, and made bandages of it, with which, in the beſt manner I could, I bound up the wounds of the dying Kaminoluqua. I did the ſame alſo to the arm of his comrade. But, as it would have been dangerous for us to remain too long in a place ſo near the horde, I thought it

prudent to depart as quickly as poſſible. I directed the wounded men to be placed on my two horſes, and marched myſelf on foot, continuing to command the rear guard. We had fortunately no occaſion again to croſs the river, my camp being on this ſide, as I have already obſerved; accordingly I proceeded ſtraight towards it.

After five hours travelling, having found an open plain, where I had no reaſon to fear being attacked by ſurpriſe, I halted and reſolved to paſs the night there, out of pity for the two wounded men. The motion of the journey had rendered them worſe. One of them already experienced that fatal rattling in the throat which is the ſign of approaching death, and which left me no hope of his recovery. Him I directed to be laid on the ground, and conceived that the beſt thing I could do was there to ſuffer him quietly to die.

The ſhaking of the horſe, renewing the pains of his comrade, drew from him the moſt agonizing cries on the road, which pierced my very ſoul; and he conjured me a hundred times to put an end to his torments by ſhooting

ing him through the head. I took off the bandage from his arm, and ſaw, by the ſwelling and inflammation it had produced, that his ſufferings muſt have been extreme. My ſavages went in queſt of ſome herbs, which they bruiſed and applied by way of poultice: while I, as the beſt means I could deviſe, directed ſplints to be prepared to ſteady his arm; but they employed a much more ingenious contrivance, the ſimplicity of which ſurpriſed me.

They choſe a young tree nearly of the ſize of the fractured limb, and, making a longitudinal inciſion in the bark, ſeparated a piece of a certain length from its whole circumference; then opening this kind of ſheath, they placed the arm in it, and confined it with a thong.

I admired the novelty and readineſs of the invention; for I was ignorant that it had been known in Europe for ſeveral years, and that our ſurgeons had lately employed the bark of the oak for the ſame purpoſe, and with ſimilar ſucceſs. Thus ſimple and beneficent nature is always the laſt to whom we have recourſe; though it requires ages of learning and immenſe ſtudy to learn to forget her for a moment.

At the approach of night I ordered large

fires

fires to be kindled, which, being diſpoſed in a circle of more than four hundred paces in diameter, formed a ring around us upwards of twelve hundred paces in extent. Its vivid light, expoſing an extenſive field to our view, guarded us from ſurpriſe; and at the ſame time it would keep our enemies at ſuch a diſtance, if they came to attack us, that we ſhould be out of reach of their arrows, or at moſt within random ſhot only, as they could not take the neceſſary aim to do us effectual injury. My marquee was pitched in the centre of this large circle, and had another fire near it.

About ten at night, the ſavage whom I had given over as irrecoverable expired; and his death, from the gloomy reflections to which it gave riſe, diffuſed a melancholy ſorrow among my people. I retired to my tent to indulge my feelings: but my dog, who lay by my ſide, preſently diſplayed extraordinary uneaſineſs, at which I was alarmed. Liſtening I heard the roar of a lion. No doubt it was the ſame by which the Kaminouquas had been attacked the night before, and that had followed our ſteps. A few diſcharges of our guns, however, drove him away, and we heard him no more.

Some minutes after, I was alarmed by the tumultuous movements of our cattle: they joſtled one another in a fearful manner, were in violent agitation, and bellowed terribly. At firſt we thought it was the lion returning, and a few guns were fired again to drive him away: but their fright, which ſtill continued, indicated enemies of another kind. At the ſame time I heard on the outſide of my marquee a noiſe like ſomething continually falling upon and ſtriking it.

Though my dog was ſtill reſtleſs, I gave little heed to his warning, as I had frequently heard ſimilar blows occaſioned by large beetles flying headlong againſt my tent. I lay ſtill, therefore, on my mat; but preſently feeling the cloak that covered me to be ſtruck by ſomething, I ſtretched out my hand, and, to my ſurpriſe, picked up an arrow.

It was clear that we were attacked, and that the Boſhmen, availing themſelves of the night, had purſued and were actually firing upon us. I called to arms, and my troop was inſtantly in a ſtate of defence. As the fire near my tent diffuſed too much light around us, and thereby expoſed us too viſibly to their arrows, I ordered

dered it to be extinguiſhed. By this proceeding we were ourſelves in a degree of darkneſs, while the fires that ſurrounded us would render our enemies perfectly viſible if they approached. No one, however, appeared; yet they continued from time to time to let fly their arrows at my tent.

My people would fain have taken it down: but this I would not permit, for I was glad that its whiteneſs rendered it perceptible, and that it ſerved as a mark to the ſhooters. We had only to retire from it, and remain at a little diſtance, to have nothing to fear from them: beſides, the more they ſhot, the ſooner it was to be preſumed their quivers would be emptied, and conſequently the ſooner would they be induced to retreat.

My only fear was, that, knowing us to be few in number, and themſelves a multitude in compariſon, they would direct their attack accordingly. Certainly, if they had ſurrounded us by forming a circle, and had then fallen all at once upon our little band, we muſt have been maſſacred without reſource. But this was beyond their ſkill in tactics. So far from forming ſuch a plan, all their arrows came from the

ſame ſide, which ſhewed they were united in a body there, and did not mean to ſeparate.

This imprudence gave us a great advantage over them, by pointing at the ſpot at which we might direct our guns. Such of my Hottentots as had arrows requeſted that they might make uſe of them alſo; but I would not permit it; for their uncertain aim would have been uſeleſs at the time, and would beſides, while it ſtripped us of our weapons, have furniſhed a ſupply to the enemy.

The ſafeſt way in our ſituation was to wait patiently, and ſuffer them to exhauſt their ſtock of arrows. Moſt of them fell upwards of twenty paces from us, and thoſe that reached us were ſhot at random, and had ſpent their force; ſo that being myſelf wrapped in my cloak, and my people in their kroſſes, we had nothing to fear from them.

What I foreſaw took place. Our aſſailants exhauſted their ammunition; a few arrows only were now ſhot towards us at conſiderable intervals; and the approach of day ſoon made them give over the attack altogether, and think of nothing but retreating.

It is certain that, thus diſarmed and defence-

leſs,

leſs, they had expoſed themſelves to great riſk; and, if I had thought proper to purſue them, I might have maſſacred a great number. This my people eagerly adviſed. But of what advantage to me would a few murders have been? I had regained poſſeſſion of my herd, and perhaps too much blood had already been ſhed. If the return of dawn, therefore, gave me pleaſure, it was that it freed me from an attack which had occaſioned ſome uneaſineſs, and permitted me to reſume my journey.

My Hottentot bowmen employed themſelves in collecting the arrows. There was a conſiderable number, and they were all poiſoned. Three only had penetrated into my tent; ſeventeen had pierced the canvaſs, and ſtill remained there; all the reſt were ſcattered around. One of my oxen, however, had received two wounds; and as the wounds, though ſlight, muſt have proved mortal in conſequence of the poiſon, I ordered him to be killed and cut up immediately for our eating.

Before we ſet off, I was deſirous that we ſhould bury the corpſe of our unfortunate Kaminouqua, or at leaſt cover it with ſand and

ſtones; and I propoſed it to his countrymen: but they aſked my permiſſion to take it with them. They were afraid that the robbers, when they returned to ſearch for their arrows, would diſcover the body, and lay upon it ſome fatal ſpell. Such, ſaid they, is the cuſtom of the Boſhmen; and in this way do thoſe barbarians frequently cauſe a whole family, and ſometimes even a whole nation, to periſh.

Theſe remarks betrayed groſs ignorance and ſuperſtition. But, as I had no hopes of enlightening them, I conſented to their requeſt. The body of the dead Kaminouqua was accordingly wrapped up in his kroſs, and placed upon the back of an ox; and we departed.

I continued to purſue nearly the ſame courſe, keeping at ſome diſtance, however, from the trees on the ſide of the river, that we might neither be ſurrounded nor ſurpriſed. After four hours march, I thought proper to halt to take ſome refreſhment. We had now been faſting four-and-twenty hours, without having been able to ſleep, or ſwallow ſo much as a morſel of food.

While we were taking our repaſt, three ſavages of the Gheyſſiqua nation paſſed us; a

nation

nation which I had been aſſured was the only one among the Hottentots that practiſed ſemi-caſtration. Their horde was ſix leagues diſtant on our left, to the ſouth-eaſt; and they were going to viſit ſome hordes of the greater Nimiquas. But when they heard of our adventure with the Boſhmen, they imagined theſe freebooters would ſtill remain in the field for ſeveral days to annoy me on my march, and that it would not be prudent for them to continue their journey. Accordingly they reſolved to return.

As I had been attacked the preceding night, and, having ſtill two nights to paſs before I could reach my camp, had reaſon to fear I ſhould be attacked again, I thought I ſhould act wiſely by altering my courſe, and accompanying the Gheyſſiquas to their horde. By this oblique march, I might deceive the Boſhmen, and throw them off their ſcent; and if, notwithſtanding the darkneſs of the night, they diſcovered my ſtratagem and perceived my ſteps, I had reaſon to imagine they would ceaſe to follow, or at leaſt not venture to approach me, when ſupported by a numerous

horde. This conjecture ſeemed plauſible to my people: they preſſed me to adopt the plan, and I did ſo.

The dead body, however, gave me ſome uneaſineſs. I was afraid it might be the object of ſome freſh ſuperſtition to the people of the horde, and that they would give us but an unwelcome reception, if they did not abſolutely drive us from their diſtrict.

To prevent this inconvenience, I propoſed to the Kaminouquas to inter the body, and they conſented. Beſides the kroſs in which it was wrapped, another was put over its face; it was then covered with ſtones; and they fulfilled, as far as circumſtances allowed, all the duties preſcribed by the cuſtoms of their nation.

It was ſunſet when we reached the horde; and I was received with the ſame friendſhip as I had experienced every where elſe. But no ſooner was our adventure known than they were ſeized with alarm. They had no doubt but the Boſhmen would come and attack us again during the night. In conſequence they not only removed their cattle, but requeſted

me

me to keep mine ſeparate from them, and at a diſtance from the kraal.

Theſe precautions aroſe from the bad opinion entertained of the Boſhmen; and indeed the tales they related of them rendered their ſuſpicions excuſable. According to theſe Gheyſſiquas, the Boſhmen horde was nothing but the retreat of aſſaſſins, the aſylum of thieves, compoſed of deſerters from twenty different nations; and ſo much the more dangerous, becauſe, being formidable from their number, they attacked, openly and without diſtinction, every little tribe from which they could expect any booty.

Theſe ſocieties of Boſhmen in no wiſe reſemble thoſe I had ſeen in the eaſt of Africa. The latter, compoſed of thieves and runaways who diſtruſt one another, were few in number, and conſiſted of little ſeparate bands, from whom, of courſe, nothing more than ſome bold ſtroke or nocturnal ſurpriſe was to be feared. The others, on the contrary, thoſe with whom I had at preſent to deal, compoſe a formidable nation; and, to ſay the truth, I was aſtoniſhed that a ſociety of men without

reſtraint, without diſcipline, and without friends, were able to ſubſiſt. Yet what ſtill more ſurpriſed me was, that they ſhould ſubſiſt with impunity, and poſſeſs a peaceable abode in the midſt of twenty different hordes, which inceſſantly ſuffered from their robberies, and had not the courage to extirpate them.

With reſpect to the robbery which regarded myſelf, I here learned ſome particulars of the manner in which it had been accompliſhed, with which I was before unacquainted. Bernfry and Moodel, it ſeems, had given the advice and concerted the plan. Theſe two villains, united together and worthy of being friends, were in alliance with the Boſhmen. On the watch for expeditions and enterpriſes which the Boſhmen may undertake, they give them information, point out the means of ſucceeding, direct the execution, and ſhare the profit.

Moodel in particular, more cloſely connected with the horde than Bernfry, was at once their ſpy and protector. All his cattle were kept at their kraal; all I ſaw there had his mark, and belonged to him; and the Gheyſſiquas expreſſed their ſorrow that I did not, as a puniſh-

a puniſhment for the theft committed on me, take them away.

I had taken every precaution for the defence of mine, ſhould we be attacked again in the night; but whether the Boſhmen loſt our track in the dark, or whether they feared the aſſiſtance that might be given me by the horde, they did not appear.

To eſcape them entirely and reach my camp, I had now, as nearly as I could eſtimate, fifteen or ſixteen leagues to travel; and, as ſo long a journey was not to be accompliſhed in one day, I could have wiſhed to proceed as far as poſſible by a forced march, and then halt for the night. But the condition of my oxen prevented my executing this plan. As the thieves had compelled them to travel without reſting, and had not even once allowed them time to feed, they were ſo extremely fatigued and reduced, that I deſpaired of being able to drive them a ſtep farther. I ſaw them ſtretched on the ground as if they were never more to riſe. They were in the midſt of excellent graſs; yet, notwithſtanding this circumſtance, and hungry as they were, their wearineſs was

ſo

ſo great as to take from them all deſire of eating.

It was fortunate for me, under ſuch circumſtances, that I had arrived at a place where I had nothing to fear from the Boſhmen. This ſecurity, added to the excellence of the paſture, determined me to remain for a while where I was. Beſides, our halt, while it allowed the cattle time to recover, would alſo afford reſt to our wounded Kaminouqua, who had in reality equal need of it.

His arm had ſwelled to ſuch a degree, that it was neceſſary to place it in a larger piece of bark. All the part about the elbow had ſuppurated, and ſplinters were working out of it, which his ſurgeons extracted without pity, though the operation drew from him the moſt lamentable cries. They continued to apply cataplaſms to his wound, compoſed of chewed leaves and mutton ſuet. He had the moſt ſanguine hopes from this remedy; and I alſo, ignorant as I was, had ſome confidence in it, becauſe his wounds, except the ſwelling, looked well, and he felt eaſy every time they were cooled by the application of a freſh dreſſing.

To

To judge of the Gheyſſiquas by their features and the clapping of their language, they are of the Hottentot nation. They have marks of reſemblance to the Gonaquas; and, from a compariſon of theſe analogies, I believe them to have ſprung from the Nimiquas and the Caffres, as the Gonaquas are deſcended from the Caffres and the Hottentots.

The diſtrict inhabited by the Gheyſſiqua nation borders on Caffraria, which confirms my conjecture. The people of the horde themſelves ſhowed me a chain of mountains to the eaſt, which extending to a diſtance was loſt in the north, and which, inhabited by their principal tribes, ſeparated them from the Caffres, or at leaſt from the Briquas and Bremas, whom they conſider as tribes of Caffres.

The Gheyſſiqua language appeared to me to be nearly the ſame as that of the Greater Nimiquas; yet theſe two people ſeemed to bear leſs reſemblance to each other than any of the African nations.

With reſpect to ſuch characteriſtics as are not original and derived from nature, as the form of their dreſs, weapons, inſtruments of muſic, fondneſs for hunting and dancing, and

the

the like, the Gheyſſiquas do not differ from the ſurrounding nations; except in having adopted a particular colour for their ornaments. All the ornaments of the Gheyſſiquas are white, and compoſed of the bones of a ſheep's leg or foot, to which they give a dazzling whiteneſs by proceſſes peculiar to themſelves. Thus, as they fabricate their own necklaces and other articles of luxury, and have no occaſion to purchaſe the materials, they have no dependence on the colonies with reſpect to trade, except for a few neceſſary articles, which they want in common with other ſavages. Accordingly this nation is leſs known and leſs viſited than any other.

The women are well made, lively, and always ready to laugh or dance: yet, with all the gaiety of their diſpoſition, they have the reſervedneſs of manners to which poliſhed nations give the names of modeſty and decorum, and which, in ſo warm a climate and with ſuch ardent conſtitutions, appears to be a virtue of no eaſy attainment.

I am ignorant to what phyſical or moral cauſe they are indebted for their continence; and I ſhall only obſerve how ſtrange it is, that

in the ſame climate, and among people differing ſo little from each other, we ſhould find here women ſo chaſte, and there others ſo much the reverſe!

No where did I meet with a nation ſo truly generous. I had abſolutely nothing to give in exchange; yet during the two days I ſpent with them, I had bowls of milk brought me as preſents, night and morning, from every hut. The chief even obliged me to accept a lamb; and, though my people had ſtill ſome of the ox that had been killed the day before, he would give them alſo ſeveral ſheep to regale themſelves with.

I have obſerved above, that ſemi-caſtration is practiſed excluſively among the Gheyſſiquas; and it prevails in all their hordes without exception, as I was aſſured by thoſe in whom I convinced myſelf of the fact by my own eyes, which I did without difficulty; for no ſooner was the ſubject of my curioſity known, than every one complaiſantly offered to ſatisfy me, ſo that if I had pleaſed I might have inſpected the whole horde.

Many travellers have written upon the ſubject of this whimſical operation; but they do not

agree either as to its origin, the motives that led to its invention, or the nations that practiſe it. Kolben, who never agrees with any other author, and often not very well with himſelf, repreſents it as a religious ceremony, a general and ſacred law with all the Hottentots indiſcriminately.

According to him, a prieſt is charged with the performance. "No one is remembered "ever to have violated it; and woe to him "who ſhould endeavour to ſhun the ceremony, "as he would thereby certainly forfeit his life!" "The prejudices that prevail with reſpect to "this duty are even ſuch," he adds, "that a "woman would not ſubmit to the embraces of "a man who had not undergone the operation. The girls, when they marry, are very "rigorous in exacting proof of it; and as their "natural modeſty does not allow them to ſatisfy themſelves, this office is left to the matrons of the family."

Every word of what I have juſt recited from Kolben is fabulous. Yet if we were to believe him, he has often been preſent at the operation; which, he tells us, commonly conſiſts in the extraction of the left teſticle; and he even deſcribes

deſcribes minutely all the circumſtances. But this is another of his falſehoods; and at the Cape, where all the world knows he was never once out of the town, this lying aſſertion is a matter of public notoriety.

With regard to the motives that have induced the ſavages to adopt the practice in queſtion, I have already ſaid, that travellers are not agreed upon the ſubject. Some attribute it to the deſire of rendering themſelves more fleet in running; others to an intention of preventing the too abundant propagation of the ſpecies. Kolben ſeems to incline to the latter opinion: yet, far from adducing arguments to ſupport it, he contradicts it himſelf, by advancing, that twins are not the leſs common on account of the operation.

Theſe contradictions formed in the head of this author a confuſion and perplexity, which he knew not how to unravel; and thence he concludes, that "it is by no means aſtoniſhing "if writers who have preceded him in giving "accounts of the Cape, differ from one another, "ſince the Hottentots themſelves do not agree "in the reaſons they aſſign for ſo whimſical a "cuſtom."

Though I have had it in my power to interrogate, reſpecting its origin, the nations that practiſe it, I cannot flatter myſelf with knowing more of it than other travellers. Thoſe of the Gheyſſiquas whom I queſtioned on the ſubject gave me ſuch an abſurd reaſon, that I almoſt heſitate to repeat it. According to them, it was a mark of diſtinction which their anceſtors, being at war with the neighbouring nations, invented for the purpoſe of knowing one another.

On ſuch occaſions I am well aware that people nearly naked, and reſembling each other in features and complexion, ſtand in need of diſtinguiſhing marks and means of knowing their fellows. It is with this view that moſt of the nations that furniſh ſlaves to Europeans, as the Loangoes, Pomboes, Cormantins, Aboes, Papas, &c. ſcar their faces, arms, breaſts, and all the forepart of the body from head to foot. The figure and arrangement of theſe ſcars are ſuch, that each nation may be diſtinguiſhed at firſt ſight, and even at a diſtance. At Surinam I have obſerved the ſlaves brought for ſale produce a greater or leſs price, according to the ſcars by which their country was diſtinguiſhed.

That external marks thus apparent may have

have been invented by uncultivated nations is eaſy to be conceived: but that the people of one of them, in order to recognize each other, ſhould adopt a mark difficult to diſtinguiſh, and which modeſty would incline them to conceal, appears to me to be improbable, and not entitled to belief.

Be this as it may, there are two modes of performing the operation; and as they are not equally painful, one or the other is employed according to the age of the ſubject and the ſtrength of his conſtitution. I ſhall not enter into particulars on this point: the proceſſes are nearly the ſame as they would be with us, and the reſult has already been ſufficiently explained. I ſhall only obſerve, that the father uſually takes upon him the operation, which he commonly performs at the birth of the child. Sometimes, however, he defers it till the child is three years old, or even more; and then, as I have juſt ſaid, a different mode is employed by him.

If I had pleaſed, I might have been preſent at the ceremony. A woman of the horde was near the time of her delivery; but I ſhould have been obliged, perhaps, to have

waited ſeveral days, and this delay did not accord with my impatience to reach my camp.

On the other hand I could have wiſhed not to reſume my journey, for fear of being again attacked by the Boſhmen. I was deſirous of informing Swanepoel of my ſituation, and obtaining from him a reinforcement which would enable me to repel them; but how could I tranſmit to him my orders? I had already propoſed this commiſſion to the people of the horde the firſt day of my arrival, but in vain, for no one would undertake it; and as to my own people, they ſpoke of it with ſo much reluctance and affright, that, after ſounding them upon the ſubject, I thought it prudent not to make the propoſal.

Klaas, indeed, was ſufficiently intrepid and devoted to my ſervice to embrace it, and he even offered to ſet out alone. But, in my preſent ſituation, the bravery of this man was more neceſſary to me than ever. He was the ſoul of my troop; he ſupported its courage by his example; and, if we ſhould be again attacked, I had too much need of ſuch a ſecond voluntarily to part with him. I gave up,

there-

therefore, all thoughts of a reinforcement, and found myſelf obliged to continue my journey as I had begun it.

I ventured, however, to requeſt of the chief a few men to ſerve me as an eſcort to my camp; and, to induce them to comply, I announced, that I would reward them for their ſervices when I arrived, and that I ſhould be equally ready to make him alſo ſome acknowledgment for his. I expected a refuſal; but to my aſtoniſhment, ſeveral perſons, without heſitation, offered to accompany me.

What was more, the chief ſent with me one of his daughters, requeſting me to deliver to her the preſents intended for himſelf, and not to entruſt them to any one elſe; which I accordingly promiſed.

We ſet off two hours before dawn, that we might have a longer day, and advance ſo much the farther. The people of the horde doubted not but the Boſhmen were at hand, to watch our ſteps, and attack us under favour of the night: and this conjecture was the more probable, inaſmuch as having a wide plain to croſs we muſt march in view. But if this were an inconvenience on the one hand, we

had the advantage on the other of being able to ſee all around us, and to diſcover our enemies as quickly and as eaſily as they could diſcover us.

By the ſilence obſerved by my people, and the haſte with which they proceeded, I judged that they were not altogether devoid of fear. But, when day appeared, a complete change took place; and they vented their courage in the moſt laughable bravadoes. They argued with one another on the means of repulſing theſe Boſhmen, of whom they were no longer afraid; and on the ſtratagems and manœuvres to be employed to exterminate every man of them, if they had the boldneſs to make their appearance.

Each went beyond his companion in his boaſts. It was who could profeſs moſt intrepidity in facing a danger from which they ſaw themſelves free. Proud as your train-bands, who may have been engaged in a ſkirmiſh with the mob, they recounted the adventures of the night in which we had been attacked, and wiſhed it again to return.

This ebullition of courage continued, however, the whole day. The moment a ditch, a hillock,

a hillock, or any little riſing, appeared before us, ſeveral of them would voluntarily ſet off to reconnoitre it, and be ſure that no ambuſcade was formed there; and they would not ſuffer us to advance till they gave the ſignal. They were real children, whoſe very timidity rendered their company the more diverting to me, and whom I might have led to either pole, through a hundred deſerts, provided I could have guarantied their lives, which they valued above all things; happy in being ignorant of our wants, which frequently render exiſtence a burden to us not eaſy to be ſupported.

During the halt we made to dine, one of the ſavages of the horde, who had gone upon the ſcout, came to inform me, that a few leagues to the right he had diſcovered one of the angles formed by the Orange in its courſe, and had perceived the trees ſkirting its banks. This was joyful news to my troop. We reſumed our journey gaily without altering our way, and about four in the afternoon reached the river, having travelled ten leagues in the courſe of the day.

As maſter, the firſt thing I did was to chooſe an advantageous place for the encampment

of my little caravan. In the midſt of the trees on the banks we ſhould have run too much riſk, if the Boſhmen had come to attack us in the night. Five or ſix hundred paces on this ſide of them was a tolerable large clump of ſhrubs, chiefly conſiſting of ebonies.

This cloſe and buſhy thicket appeared to me well calculated to ſerve us as a ſhelter. I directed ſuch trees as were near, and that were capable of obſtructing our ſight, to be cut down, which required little trouble, as they were all euphorbias, great or ſmall. Then, while ſome of my people were diſpatched on all ſides to cut wood for the fires of the night, others were employed, under my direction, in clearing the interior of the thicket, and forming a place capable of containing us. The outer edge we fortified with branches interwoven together, and covered with mats and ſkins. Laſtly, to protect us from ſuch arrows as might fall vertically on our heads, I cauſed my marquee to be ſtretched by way of canopy on ſome ſtakes, and thus formed a roof, under which we were perfectly ſheltered. With theſe precautions we could fear no nocturnal

attack

attack in the midſt of our fort, in which we might have defied all the Boſhmen of Africa.

The oxen were tied up in a circle round the inſide of the incloſure, and ſo near us, that we could almoſt touch them with our hands. Thus defended, it was impoſſible to think of carrying them off. But their proximity had one inconvenience; the noiſe they made by their different movements, and the uneaſineſs they ſhowed from time to time, and which we conſidered as indications either of Boſhmen or of wild beaſts, kept us ſo conſtantly on the alarm, that it was impoſſible for one of us to cloſe his eyes.

The night, however, though very unquiet, paſſed without our being any otherwiſe diſturbed. We heard nothing but hyænas and jackals, the cries of which, in our ſituation, were pleaſing prognoſtics, as they convinced us that there were no Boſhmen in the plain.

Notwithſtanding this proof of ſecurity, I was unwilling to reſume my journey till the ſun had made his appearance. Indeed we had not above five leagues to travel; and, of courſe, the day was more than ſufficient for ſo ſhort a march. It is true, that as we reſolved to proceed

ceed along the wood by the river's ſide, in order to ſhorten our way, we could advance but ſlowly, becauſe, having ambuſcades to fear, many precautions were to be taken.

When arrived nearly about half way, we heard the report of ſome guns fired on the river. I ſent to examine what was the occaſion of it. Four of my people were hunting hippopotamuſes, and when informed of my approach, they came to expreſs their joy, and bring me news of my camp. My long abſence had given alarm. Uneaſy at hearing no tidings of me, Swanepoel had ſuppoſed me to be killed by the Boſhmen, with all my party, and that he ſhould never ſee me again. I diſpatched a man on horſeback to acquaint him with my return, and two hours after we arrived at the camp.

My firſt buſineſs when I alighted was to take care of the wounded Kaminouqua. I ordered my marquee to be erected for him; and, recommending him to the attention of ſuch of his comrades as appeared the moſt intelligent, borne down as I was with ſleepineſs and fatigue, I retired to reſt in my waggon. As for my people, they ſpent the night in

feaſting, and in giving a minute account of our expedition.

Bernfry, being informed of my arrival by his emiſſaries, had the audacity again to make his appearance in my camp. His deſign was to impoſe upon me with reſpect to his conduct, and to endeavour to wipe out the ſuſpicions I might have conceived of him. He profeſſed a warm zeal for my welfare, and the greateſt perſonal attachment. He ſpoke of the horde of robbers, and informed me, that we had killed four or five perſons, and ſeverely wounded ſeveral others. But he added, that they had ſworn to be revenged; and that I muſt redouble my vigilance and precautions, if I wiſhed to eſcape a ſurpriſe, of which, ſoon or late, I muſt inevitably become the victim. My greateſt enemy in this buſineſs, according to him, was Moodel. It was Moodel who protected the horde, and of him, therefore, I ought to be particularly on my guard.

'Thus, the better to deceive me, did the knave betray and point out to my vengeance his comrade and only friend. But his ſingular villany did not impoſe upon me. I cut ſhort every explanation and all farther ſubtlety on

his part, by pretending to receive his intelligence as very important advice. I even took care not to let him perceive the ſuſpicion I had of himſelf. By this apparent confidence I left it in my power to watch his conduct ſecretly. Though, after all, notwithſtanding the art he had employed to inſpire me with dread, I feared neither Moodel nor himſelf, nor even the Boſhmen.

Beſides, as my thoughts were employed on my departure, my ſole object was to quit the borders of Orange-River without delay. I had already iſſued orders for the neceſſary preparations, and I waited only for their being finiſhed to be gone. This, however, would require time. My carriages wanted repairing, for ſo injured were they by the heat, that every piece of wood that compoſed them was looſe. My new oxen were alſo to be broken in; ſince, having never felt the yoke, they were ſtartled at the very ſight of a waggon, and when my people had accompliſhed the harneſſing them, and they heard the noiſe of the wheels behind, they became furious, and broke or overturned every thing.

The endeavours made to ſubdue them were attended

attended with great riſks and labour, which continued a long time; and the fruitleſſneſs of theſe attempts occaſioned me daily fits of impatience. My people, poſſeſſing more calmneſs of temper, were not ſo eaſily rebuffed; and they aſſured me, if I would leave the matter to their management, they would not fail to accompliſh their purpoſe. But the leſſons they gave were ſo ſevere, that I could not witneſs them without extreme pain. According to them, theſe poor animals were too old to ſubmit quietly to the yoke, and there was no hope of bending them to it but by dint of blows.

It is true, there were ſtill five of my former ones remaining, which were yoked with the new ones, that they might be broken in by their example. But before theſe even would ſubmit to work, they received from my people a good beating with the *ſchabouck;* and this correction was ſo often repeated, that I found myſelf abſolutely incapable of enduring the ſpectacle. Accordingly, whenever the leſſon began, I took my gun, and rambled to a diſtance, thereby to be out of ſight and hearing of it.

I had hoped that theſe excurſions would recompenſe me by new acquiſitions, and that I ſhould find among the birds that inhabited the woods ſome addition to my collection. But I was diſappointed. The time of their paſſage was over; and the great and little bee-eaters, varieties of ſwallows and other ſpecies, had all diſappeared.

Another remark which I made while in this part of Africa I conſider as too important to be omitted. The moment the hurricane from the ſouth-eaſt, of which I have ſpoken above, had ceaſed, the wind veered to the north, where it conſtantly remained, with a few variations only to the two neighbouring points, north by weſt, and north by eaſt. Occaſionally we had a few ſhowers, but ſo ſlight that they ſcarcely wetted the ſand. The ſky, however, had continued gloomy and overſhadowed, the wind driving before it numerous clouds, which proceeded to accumulate on the mountains of Camis, and prepare the rainy ſeaſon for the Cape.

This ſeaſon had already commenced in the mountains to the north, where the Orange takes its ſource. At leaſt this river, ſince I croſſed

croſſed it, that is to ſay, within a fortnight, had riſen more than twenty feet. It flowed now on a level with its banks, and carried along with it ſeveral whole trees which it had torn up by the roots, and even formed, in ſeveral parts of the plain, extenſive lakes. In a word, my camp, which at firſt had been ſtationed ſix hundred paces from the water's edge, and had not been moved, was now diſtant from it not above fifty. Almoſt all the trees were nearly covered by it, their tops and a few branches only being perceptible. This ſight, one of the grandeſt I ever beheld in Africa, if it had not been at variance with my ſchemes, would long have feaſted my eyes. Beſides other inconveniences to the danger of my caravan, this ſwell of the river deprived me of the advantage of hunting hippopotamuſes; for theſe amphibious animals, as they do not love muddy and troubled waters, had retired towards the ſea-ſhore.

Many of my new ſavages belonging to hordes on the other ſide of the river regretted, on account of its overflow, their having remained ſo long with me. The Gheyſſiquas, on the contrary, free from this occaſion of uneaſineſs,

eaſineſs, and being well fed in my camp, were happy in remaining, and ſeemed not to think of their departure. But I had engaged to ſend them back in a week, and I kept my word.

I gave them all more than I had promiſed. The preſent deſigned for the chief was entruſted to his daughter, as he had deſired; and I added thereto a pretty red handkerchief for herſelf, and ſome white glaſs beads, which ſhe highly valued. She had been treated with diſtinction in my camp. No convenience had been denied her, not even that of anointing; and I ſometimes attended her toilette, which indeed was always the ſame, but I every time received freſh pleaſure in obſerving the pains ſhe took to adorn and diſplay her charms, the ſight of which rendered me every day more reſerved and circumſpect.

This troop had ſcarcely departed, when another arrived, conſiſting of thirty-ſix perſons, men and women. Theſe were Hottentots who reſide on the confines of the colony, and who, buying at ſecond or third hand certain commodities from the planters, travel into the interior of the country there to barter them with other ſavages for cattle, which on their return

they

they ſell to the coloniſts. There are alſo whites who follow this kind of trade; but they are far from dealing with the ſame honeſty as the ſavages of whom I am ſpeaking.

Theſe people arrived from the eaſtern countries, where they had purchaſed a herd of about threeſcore cattle. Having heard of me there, they had endeavoured to find me, and came to aſk permiſſion to join my caravan and return with me to their habitations. To this requeſt I gave my conſent, informing them, however, that I had as yet neither determined on the day of my departure, nor the road I ſhould take.

With regard to ſubſiſtence, I promiſed to ſhare with them the produce of my hunting, as long as game was to be found: but added, that the moment game failed, and I ſhould be obliged to have recourſe to my herd to feed my people, I ſhould then leave them to themſelves to get proviſion as they could. I obſerved alſo that I ſhould not furniſh them with tobacco; for my ſtock of this article, ſo important to a ſavage, began to fall ſhort. With regard to my brandy, though I had left a ſmall ſtore at my departure, it was conſiderably di-

miniſhed at my return. I could not avoid teſtifying my diſpleaſure at this circumſtance to Swanepoel himſelf, as I ſuſpected him of having yielded to the temptation and conſumed it unneceſſarily.

The traders thanked me for the readineſs of my compliance, as well as for the ſervices I propoſed to render them. The conditions I found myſelf obliged to impoſe were indeed too reaſonable for them to make any objection; and ſo far from requiring tobacco of me, they had ſtill ſeveral rolls remaining of fifteen or twenty pounds each, beſide what was neceſſary for themſelves, which they offered to ſpare me. This offer I accepted, promiſing to pay them, as ſoon as we reached the poſſeſſions of the Dutch, either in money or in kind, as they ſhould like beſt.

Nothing yet informed me when I might expect to depart. My people, with all their exertions, could not accompliſh the breaking in of my oxen; and the delay thus occaſioned, which was pure waſte of time, mortified me extremely: however, I attempted to make at leaſt ſome advantage of it, by looking over my collection, and putting it in order for conveyance.

The

The ſkin of the giraffe in particular wanted ſome preparation, for it had become in drying as hard as iron, ſo that there was no bending it, and of courſe it could not be carried with any convenience. I firſt ſoaked it in the river for a few hours, and then ſteeped it in a decoction of tobacco, camphor, and ſoap; and by theſe means it was rendered ſo ſupple, that I could pack it up as I pleaſed.

Having finiſhed the arrangement of my collection, I employed the leiſure that remained in drawing plants and flowers. There were immenſe quantities in the neighbourhood; and every day the ſeaſon occaſioned freſh ones to blow. But I made my drawings rather as an amateur than a naturaliſt, and attended only to ſuch as appeared moſt beautiful and rare.

While ſpeaking of theſe things, though in another point of view, I cannot help expreſſing my regret that Sparmann, who was ſo little preſſed for time when he undertook his journey, or Paterſon, who ſeems to have travelled poſt, and as a man eager to finiſh his expedition, had not formed the deſign of penetrating into the country of the Kabobiquas, and as

far even as the mountains of the Houzouanas.

What treaſures would theſe learned botaniſts have found there! And what riches might they not have brought away with them!

I have myſelf, indeed, but a few ſcore drawings, to prove what ſcience might have gained by their means: yet I invite other travellers to undertake what my little knowledge of botany prevented me from performing; and I dare promiſe them before hand the moſt ſplendid ſucceſs. But at the ſame time I muſt tell them, that they ought to dedicate ſeveral years to their reſearches, without which it will be impoſſible for them to accompliſh their purpoſe to any great extent.

It is not in Africa as in what are called the temperate countries of Europe. In theſe, nature gives the earth to vegetate part of the year only, while, during the other part, it is dead and lifeleſs. In Africa, on the contrary, there is no interruption. The ſoil, warmed by the continual heat, is always fertile; and every month yields its plants, its flowers, and its fruits. Nor is there, as in Europe, a gradual development and regular ſucceſſion. It is not

the

the ſeaſon, nor is it the greater or leſs propinquity of the equator, that occaſions a more or leſs abundant vegetation. The ſun itſelf, elſewhere conſidered as the primary cauſe of fertility, is here the ſecondary only. Its heat, it is true, is aſſiſting to the birth, growth, and ripening of vegetables; but they are the rains more particularly that occaſion them to ſpring up and unfold themſelves, that determine in great meaſure the place and time of their appearance, and cauſe them to ſhow themſelves in one place ſooner than in another. Now as the rains themſelves are owing to the ſituation of the mountains which attract the clouds, it follows, that they may be very unequally diſtributed, and that one ſpot may be deluged with them, while another, properly watered, ſhall diſplay a vigorous ſtate of vegetation, and a third, dry and parched, exhibit only the image of death and deſolation.

From this fortuitous occurrence of the rains, ſome vegetables have a ſort of accidental ſucceſſion, according to the ſpots on which they grow, that naturally they ought not to have. Thus in one place a ſpecies of flower has juſt blown, which farther on appeared ſix weeks

before, and which, ten leagues farther ſtill, will perhaps not bloſſom in leſs than two months. In Africa, nature is always alive, and her action never benumbed by cold: but it is neceſſary to be on the watch for her; and the botaniſt who traverſes the country, without reſiding in it a conſiderable time, muſt expect only the fortune of the day, and will of courſe bring away with him no other collection than what is afforded him by chance.

At the Cape are daily proofs of what I have ſaid. The colonies have long ago been viſited by amateurs of flowers and ſkilful botaniſts; yet every new comer finds ſomething with which to enrich his garden or his herbal. As it happens, perhaps, that no one arrives at the ſame place, under the ſame circumſtances, and at the ſame period as another, each meets with plants which they who preceded him neither knew nor had the power of knowing. The two naturaliſts I mentioned above have enriched ſcience by new diſcoveries, though they came after ſo many others.

Though the majority of theſe ſucceſſive journeys were made in a ſhort ſpace of time, they have contributed nevertheleſs to extend

our

our knowledge, and increaſe the treaſures of natural hiſtory. What then would be effected, ſhould a man of information repair to ſome fertile and more diſtant ſpot, and remain a whole year, ſo as to ſee all that nature produces there blow in ſucceſſion under his eye!

What I have ſaid concerning plants is with equal truth applicable to birds; for the influence of the rains, which accelerates or retards the unfolding of the former, cannot fail to occaſion great difference in the laying, incubation, and moulting of the latter.

That I may render a double ſervice to perſons attempting a ſimilar enterpriſe to mine, I ſhall inſert here a remark, which I conſider as important, and that may ſave them from many miſtakes; which is, that the variation which is obſerved to take place in the ſame ſpecies of plants, according to the difference of age, of time, and of place, takes place alſo among the feathered tribe.

This accidental and tranſitory diſſimilitude is ſometimes ſo great, that a perſon would ſuppoſe himſelf to ſee individuals totally different; and I have known men learned in books and ſyſtems as much deceived in this reſpect as

others. One of theſe cloſet naturaliſts, for inſtance, ſhewed me four birds as ſo many different ſpecies, and even as not belonging to the ſame genus, with which I was well acquainted, and which I knew to be the ſame bird, only of different ages.

In the firſt place, every male when young has the ſame plumage as his mother; and it is only as he grows older that he aſſumes that of his ſex. I will not venture to affirm that this is an univerſal and invariable rule; but I have hitherto met with no exception to it, whereas I have verified it, by my own obſervation, in more than a thouſand different ſpecies.

Many females too, when they grow ſo old as to ceaſe laying eggs, undergo a ſimilar change, and aſſume the more ſplendid colours belonging to the male of the ſpecies, which they retain during the remainder of their lives. This fact is ſtrikingly perceptible in thoſe ſpecies in which the male and female very much differ in their colour; as the golden pheaſant of China, for inſtance, now ſo common in our aviaries, in which the change takes place. I have obſerved the ſame tranſmutation in many other birds, of which I

ſhall

ſhall ſpeak elſewhere. In ſome ſpecies, and thoſe not few in number, the male alone regularly changes his colour, and aſſumes once in a twelvemonth the plumage of the female; ſo that at a certain period of the year all the birds of this ſpecies appear to be females. I have in my poſſeſſion ſpecimens of more than fifty of theſe changing ſpecies, in all their tranſitions from one hue to another; but the one in which it appears moſt extraordinary is an African bunting, known by the name of *veuve à épaulettes rouges**. The female of this beautiful bird has the ſimple colours of the ſky-lark, and a ſhort horizontal tail, like that of almoſt all other birds; the male, on the contrary, is wholly black, except at the ſhoulder of the wing, where there is a large red patch; and his tail is long, ample, and vertical like that of the common cock. But this brilliant plumage and fine vertical tail ſubſiſt only during the ſeaſon of love, which continues ſix months. This period over, he lays aſide his ſplendid habiliments, and aſſumes the more

* See Buffon's Planches Enluminées, No. 635. V. The orange-ſhouldered bunting. Latham's Synopſis, vol. II. p. 184. T.

modeſt

modeſt dreſs of his mate. The moſt extraordinary circumſtance is, that the vertical tail alſo changes to a horizontal one, and the male ſo exactly reſembles the female, that it is not poſſible to diſtinguiſh them from each other.

The female has her turn. When ſhe reaches a certain age, and has loſt the faculty of propagating the ſpecies, ſhe clothes herſelf for the remainder of her days in the garb which the male had temporarily aſſumed; her tail, like his at that period, grows long, and, like his alſo, from horizontal becomes vertical.

The birds of this ſpecies aſſociate together, live in a ſort of republic, and build their neſts near to each other. The ſociety uſually conſiſts of about fourſcore females: but whether, by a particular law of nature, more females are produced than males, or for any other reaſon of which I am ignorant, there are never more than twelve or fifteen males to this number of females, who have them in common.

All that I have here written I have read in the great book of nature. Such obſervations, perhaps, have no great merit, and I conſider them myſelf as of little value: but they are at leaſt accurate; and the critics who have been

deſirous

deſirous of giving me their advice have neither found, nor will be able to find, ſimilar ones, either among their inventors of ſyſtems, or in the books of writers whoſe excurſions have never extended beyond the walls of a cloſet.

My people were ſtill employed in breaking in the oxen, but they were advanced in the buſineſs ſcarcely farther than at the firſt moment. One day when exerciſing them, one in particular became furious, and attempted to make his eſcape. The Hottentot who was neareſt endeavoured to ſtop him, by catching hold of the rope by which he had been faſtened; but unfortunately ſlipping his hand into a running knot, which drew tight round his wriſt, he was dragged along by the animal to a conſiderable diſtance, and torn and bruiſed in twenty places before it was poſſible to extricate him.

Juſt at that moment Bernfry arrived. He had witneſſed the accident, and was alſo preſent when I was told of it. Availing himſelf of the circumſtance, he ſtated to me how imprudent it would be to expoſe myſelf on the road with cattle ſo totally undiſciplined, and

offered

offered to provide me with a team of ſix oxen well trained to the yoke, if I would give him in exchange one of my muſkets, with twelve pounds of powder, and lead enough to caſt two hundred balls.

The bargain would have been ſufficiently advantageous to me, and, had he aſked triple the value in other articles, I would not have heſitated. But to furniſh a man of his character with arms was putting it in his power to do ſtill greater miſchief: I therefore poſitively refuſed. He, on his part, would hear of no other terms, and there the matter reſted, notwithſtanding the repreſentations of my Hottentots, who, tired of the pains they had taken to train theſe untameable beaſts, urged me to compliance.

Theſe men, who at firſt had made a jeſt of the trouble of breaking them in, now deſpaired of it. I was well aware of the perplexity of my ſituation; but I was reſolved to ſuffer any diſtreſs rather than conſent to the bargain. Accordingly, renouncing all hope of coming to an agreement, I fixed for my departure the 21ſt of May; and, when the day arrived, the oxen were yoked.

The caravan was numerous. Beſide the thirty-ſix dealers in cattle who had requeſted leave to accompany me, I had ten Nimiquas belonging to a horde near Secretary-Fountain, who purpoſed to proceed in company with us till they arrived at a ford of the river which they knew, and where they intended to croſs it. In ſhort, including both my own people and ſtrangers, the troop conſiſted of ninety-two perſons, of whom ſeventy-three were men, and nineteen women; and our herd of a hundred and ſeventy-two oxen, beſide ſheep.

The river had decreaſed within a few days; and the Kaminoûquas, availing themſelves of this circumſtance, had returned home with their wounded comrade.

All my caravan was ready to depart. Nothing but my giving the ſignal was waited for; and I had ſet one foot on the pole to mount my waggon, when the ox neareſt me flung back his heels, and ſtruck me on the leg of the other juſt as I lifted it from the ground.

I cried out: every one ran to my aſſiſtance, not doubting but my leg was broken; and, from the pain which benumbed it and took from

from me the capacity of moving it, I had every reaſon to be of the ſame opinion; nor was it till the expiration of more than a quarter of an hour, when the numbneſs went off, that I diſcovered it to be only a violent contuſion.

Klaas, already angry with me, and taking advantage of the ſevere leſſon I had thus received, bluntly addreſſed himſelf to Bernfry, offered him twelve pounds of powder and twelve of lead for two of his thill oxen; and, without allowing me time to reflect, inſtantly ran off with him to fetch them. Klaas was in the right. The two oxen arrived; the price agreed upon was paid; and we departed.

My deſign was to travel for ſome time along the ſide of the river, following its courſe, and keeping as near as poſſible to the wood that ſkirted it. By taking this road, I was ſure of water and plenty of graſs. My own waggon, by the help of the oxen that Bernfry had ſold me, proceeded tolerably well; but with the other two waggons the caſe was different. Their teams were ſo refractory and indocile, that they were twenty times on the point of being daſhed againſt the trees, or overturned and thrown down ſome precipice; and we

were

were three days in reaching the ford, which ought to have been the work of a ſingle day's journey.

The drivers, tired of their office, and loſing all patience, declared that it would be impoſſible for them to proceed any farther, unleſs I procured two oxen more, well trained, for the thill of each of the other waggons, as I had for that of my own. This was telling me to buy the four other of Bernfry. Nothing ever coſt me ſo much as this reſolution; but, notwithſtanding my reluctance, neceſſity compelled me to ſubmit to it. Accordingly I ſent away the muſket that had been demanded as the price, and waited on the banks of the river for the arrival of the oxen.

In the mean time I diſcharged my obligations to the Nimiquas. Recompenſed beyond what they had aſked for accompanying me, they left me, highly ſatisfied with my conduct, and croſſed the ford to return home.

When the oxen arrived, we alſo departed; and, after two encampments and a march of ten leagues by the ſide of the wood, we halted once more on the ſtrand of the Orange, at which we eaſily arrived with our waggons

through a commodious defile, where there was not a ſingle tree to incommode us.

Here, however, we perceived to our ſorrow, that we could proceed no farther along the river's ſide, or even along the wood that bordered it, on account of the roads, which were ſo bad as to be abſolutely impaſſable for waggons.

The 27th, quitting the river till we could find ſome more convenient route by which to return to it, we proceeded ſouth for four hours before it was in our power to verge to the weſt, and in that direction travelled ſix leagues through execrable roads. Being obliged every inſtant to alight from my waggon and get up again, I deſpaired of rejoining the river, and was momentarily on the point of abandoning my deſign. At length, on the evening of the 28th, we arrived, with great labour, at the ſite of an old kraal, which appeared to have been long abandoned, and where we pitched our camp.

The ſituation was ſo pleaſant, that I could not reſiſt the temptation of making a ſtay there. A few paces from our camp was a little wood, through which ran a gentle ſtream, that afforded

forded water for us and our cattle, and added infinitely to the beauty of the place. Every moment flocks of thoſe ring grouſe arrived which I have elſewhere mentioned. I killed them by dozens; and the ſport was ſo productive, that, during my three days abode there, it in part furniſhed ſubſiſtence for all my troop. The trees around were covered with birds of different kinds. There were even ſome that were new to me, and that ſerved to increaſe my collection.

Meanwhile ſome Leſs Nimiquas, informed of my arrival in their canton, came to viſit me, and offer me ſheep in exchange for tobacco. From them I heard, for the firſt time, of the accident that had befallen Pinar; who, after having ſo much vexed me on the road, had at length parted from me, ſeven or eight months prior to this period of my travels.

Having offended a horde near which he was encamped, he had nearly been the victim of his imprudence. His oxen had been taken away, his waggon plundered, his Hottentots killed with poiſoned arrows, and he himſelf would have loſt his life, if he had not had the

addreſs to conceal himſelf till he found an opportunity of reaching the colony.

Notwithſtanding the reaſons I had to be offended with him, I could not avoid pitying his fate. I little thought at that moment that a misfortune of another kind, but ſtill more alarming, awaited us all.

By encamping on the ſite of the kraal, I ſought to conſole myſelf for my fatigues. The coolneſs of the wood, the water by which it was waſhed, the various flowers that adorned it, of which the fragrance delighted my ſenſes—every thing, in ſhort, ſeemed to concur in fixing me for a while in this enchanting abode. It was apparently an elyſium; but, alas! hell itſelf was ſituated by its ſide. We encamped on an eſplanade, about four hundred feet in circumference, and ſmooth as if it had been levelled by art; but it had long ſerved as a fold for the cattle of the horde.

The excrements of the animals, gradually accumulating, had at length formed a layer ſeveral feet thick, which, brayed by their hoofs and moiſtened with their urine and the rain,

was

was become a ſtratum of turf, a ſulphureous and inflammable ſoil.

No one had attended to this; no one indeed could have well perceived it; for the whole ſpot on which we encamped was completely covered with a few inches of fine ſand, which had been conveyed thither by the wind. But no ſooner had we lighted our nocturnal fires than they communicated to the dried dunghill underneath its covering, and, ſecretly pervading the maſs and penetrating it in every direction, at laſt inflamed the whole. In proportion as it burned and was converted to aſhes, it ſunk down, and thereby occaſioned vacuities which, affording a paſſage to the air, increaſed and ſpread the combuſtion. At length, about the middle of the night, the conflagration burſt forth, the flames made their appearance, and they who firſt perceived them gave the alarm of fire to waken the reſt and procure aſſiſtance.

I was aſleep in my waggon: their cries ſuddenly awaked me; and the reader may judge of my fright, upon ſeeing twenty pillars of fire aſcending from the midſt of my camp, my Hottentots removing their huts, howling

like ſo many ſpirits of the damned, and running through the flames to collect my cattle, which could not move a ſtep without ſinking into the ground, and occaſioning the iſſue of freſh flames.

If extraordinary ideas ſuggeſt themſelves at ſuch a moment, it is ſurely excuſable; particularly if a perſon behold, for the firſt time, ſo tremendous a phenomenon, and it burſt on him ſuddenly, and with an alarm, in the middle of the night. My firſt thought was, that a volcano had juſt opened under our feet, and that we were in the very centre of its crater.

The fire, however, had not yet reached me. My three waggons were to windward, and by a lucky accident appeared to be in no danger for the moment. Accordingly my people called to me to remain quietly where I was, and not be uneaſy. Some of them were acquainted with ſuch fires, either from their own experience or from hearſay, ſo that their heads were not bewildered, and they were capable of giving effectual aſſiſtance where it was neceſſary. All the men and women immediately laid hold of my waggons, and dragged them

ſo

ſo far as to have reſpecting them nothing to apprehend.

Fortunately no perſon was loſt, and my oxen only ſuffered by the accident. Several of them were lamed by conſiderable burns, and one periſhed in the flames, without its being in our power to afford him aſſiſtance.

To behold this huge animal ſtruggling in the midſt of the conflagration, the fury of which was increaſed by his violent plunging, was a ſight at once dreadful and ſublime! The diſtant air rung with his cries. He ſoon expired. The fire was ſo ſtrong, that he was roaſted to the very entrails; and when it was extinguiſhed, my people ate his remains, without any farther preparation.

Warned by the fatal accident that might have befallen me, I cannot too ſtrongly recommend to thoſe who may travel in Africa, never to encamp on old deſerted kraals. Had the wind blown towards the ſide where I was ſituated, there is no doubt but the flames would ſoon have communicated to my waggons; and it is more than probable that, as I ſlept in the one which contained my whole ſtock of powder, I ſhould have been blown up and

deſtroyed, and perhaps too before my people had perceived the fire.

The greater part of the night was ſpent in removing the camp to freſh ground. Our oxen, affrighted at the uproar, and ſtill more at the flames, diſperſed themſelves in the wood, from which we had great difficulty to diſlodge them and collect them round us.

Reſuming our journey, we travelled ſeven leagues weſt by ſouth: but, the road being execrable, I again approached the river by turning to the north-weſt. After proceeding four hours in this direction, we arrived at the entrance of a paſs, at the end of which I perceived a little ſquare houſe, covered with thatch, and of which the mud-walls were neatly made and in good condition.

It is impoſſible to expreſs the uneaſineſs I felt at the ſight of this cottage. I feared that I ſhould find there a ſecond Bernfry, or another Matthew Moodel: but, on my approach, I ſaw with ſatisfaction that the houſe was at preſent without an owner; and in conſequence I took poſſeſſion of it, and pitched my camp there.

Near the houſe was a ſpring of tolerably good water;

water; and behind it a little garden gone to waſte, but which, amid the weeds that began to overrun it, ſtill contained lettuces, peaſe, pumpions, and other culinary vegetables. The paſture around appeared excellent; and the Orange flowed at a ſmall diſtance from it. In ſhort, the ſolitary who had erected his hermitage there had choſen a ſpot equally fertile and pleaſant: but I was ſurpriſed to ſee it uninhabited and abandoned; and I aſked Klaas Baſter, who, knowing the country, might be acquainted with the cauſe, if he could account for the circumſtance.

He informed me that the houſe had been built by my honeſt friend Schoenmaker; who, in his wandering life, had made, in this manner, different ſettlements on the banks of the Orange; and that he had quitted this to remove from the neighbourhood of Bernfry and Moodel, who he was aware owed him no goodwill.

I ſhall ſpeak farther on of an unfortunate family that I met in the deſert on my return to the Cape, and to whom I recommended to occupy this deſerted retreat. If they followed

my advice; if, retired to this corner of the earth, they have found an end of their misfortunes, and enjoy that peace and tranquillity which the world cannot give, they will remember my name. It is pleaſing to utter the name of a good man. The names of the oppreſſor, the traitor, and the aſſaſſin, imprint, on the contrary, a laſting horror, which converts the moſt peaceful abode into the dwelling of wretchedneſs and apprehenſion. But I have quitted the deſerts of Africa, in which I ought for ever to have remained.

Having fixed ourſelves in the hut and ſurrounding valley, I went to examine the ſtate of the river. It continued to fall. Its water was already much leſs turbid, and the hippopotamuſes began to re-appear. We immediately ſet about hunting theſe amphibious animals; and the ſame day we killed one, which afforded an ample ſtock of proviſion for my troop.

Intending as I did to begin a third journey, I was very deſirous of examining the courſe of the river, and tracing it to its mouth. But the difficulties we had already experienced rendering this ſcheme impracticable, at leaſt

with

with my waggons and all my caravan, I took the reſolution of making this little excurſion on foot with a few only of my people.

The journey could not be otherwiſe than very fatiguing; but it would take me only a fortnight. Accordingly, encumbering myſelf with no baggage, I took with me four of my hunters, of whom Klaas was one, a few of my dogs, and ſet off.

My deſign being, as I have ſaid, to reconnoitre the Orange, I travelled very ſcrupulouſly along its banks, without ever deviating from them, unleſs compelled to make a circuit by high or ſteep rocks intervening. After a few days march we diſcovered an iſland, which I was anxious to viſit, in the hope of finding there ſome new object to gratify my curioſity.

My companions had no difficulty about the paſſage, all the ſavages being excellent ſwimmers. For my part, I had recourſe to the ſame means as I had employed before in croſſing Elephants-River, beſtriding the trunk of a tree, while ſome of my ſwimmers drew it along before, and the others puſhed it behind. The firſt time I tried this expedient, it had nearly coſt me my life; but on this occaſion

the

the paſſage was ſhort, and I was too far from the ſea to have any thing to dread.

Though the iſland appeared to contain no living creature, we found ſeveral hippopotamuſes concealed in it, whence I gave it the name of Hippopotamus Iſland. The moment we appeared, ſome of theſe animals being alarmed ruſhed into the river.

One of them happening to come in the way of Klaas, he fired, and killed it on the ſpot. It was a young one. But the report of the gun rouſed others; and in leſs than a minute I ſaw more than a dozen, of all ages and ſizes, run to the water and diſappear in an inſtant. I could never have believed that an animal ſo unwieldy on land ſhould poſſeſs in the water ſuch ſurpriſing agility.

To paſs the night in the iſland would not have been prudent in me. I was too well acquainted with the rivers of Africa, and particularly the Orange, which by a ſudden augmentation might ſurpriſe and overwhelm us in the ſhort ſpace of only a few hours. Accordingly, having cut a few morſels from our hippopotamus to ſupply us with ſteaks for our ſupper, we croſſed the other arm of the river, and

and went to ſpend the night on the right bank, ſufficiently diſtant, if an inundation took place, to have nothing to apprehend.

My deſign was to return to the iſland next morning. But at ſun-riſe we perceived a vaſt herd of elephants, which made us alter our reſolution. There were at leaſt a hundred of theſe animals; and many of them had ſuch fine tuſks as to afford a ſtrong temptation to my hunters.

As they were within ſhot, we ſent a few balls after them, which put them to flight, and we immediately purſued them: not that we could hope to overtake them; but ſome of them muſt have been wounded, and we hoped a few might be wounded mortally. In fact we perceived ſeveral traces of blood, which ſerved to guide us in our purſuit, and which we followed great part of the day. But at length, the ſun beginning to decline, I was afraid night would ſurpriſe me in the midſt of the deſert, and we regained the banks of the Orange.

The ſavages term this river the traitor; and nothing indeed can be more treacherous than its ſudden ſwellings. Frequently, when its waters

are

are at the loweſt, it will riſe within the ſpace of four-and-twenty hours to the extreme of its higheſt flood. Sometimes, too, its inundations continue for ſix weeks or two months together. Now this I had to apprehend; and if the accident had happened, it would have rendered my return to the camp at the deſerted houſe of Schoenmaker, where I had left my waggons, by no means eaſy.

I deemed it prudent, therefore, to return to the river without delay. In truth, diſtant from it as we were, we were obliged to haſten our march, which, after the extreme fatigue of a day ſpent in the chace and without food, was a ſevere toil. However, we reached it before night; and the next day we ſwam over again to the iſland.

On our landing we repaired directly to the hippopotamus, with an intention to procure from it a farther ſupply of food. On its carcaſe was a ſuperb vulture, eagerly employed in devouring it. As I had never beheld one ſo large, my joy may eaſily be conceived. But this joy was detrimental to the accuracy of my aim; for, in my eagerneſs, I ſhot too much on one ſide, and wounded it but ſlightly.

Though it had already gorged itſelf with a conſiderable quantity of fleſh (for, upon opening it, I found in its ſtomach no leſs a quantity than ſix pounds and half), yet its hunger and voracity were ſuch, that it ſtruck its beak into the carcaſe when attempting to take wing, as if deſirous of carrying the whole of it away.

On the other hand, the weight of the fleſh it had devoured, rendering it the more heavy, it could not eaſily riſe; ſo that we had time to reach it before it was on the wing, and we endeavoured to knock it on the head with the butt-ends of our muſkets. It defended itſelf a long time with great intrepidity. It bit or ſtruck at our weapons with its beak, and its ſtrength was ſtill ſo great that every ſtroke made a mark on the barrel of the piece. It was ſubdued, however; and the great pleaſure afforded me by the poſſeſſion amply recompenſed all the labour and fatigue of my little excurſion.

This vulture, now in my collection, and unqueſtionably the moſt beautiful of its genus, forms a new ſpecies, hitherto wholly unknown. It is more than three feet high, and eight or nine in breadth of wing. Its ſtrength muſt have

have been very conſiderable, if we may judge from its muſcles and ſinews; and I am perſuaded there is not a ſtronger among the whole order of carnivorous birds, not excepting the famous condor, which ſo many travellers have ſeen, but of which their deſcriptions are ſo different as to render its exiſtence extremely doubtful. Thus much at leaſt is certain—there is no bird of this kind in any known collection, and no naturaliſt living can affirm that he has ſeen it. It would ſeem that all travellers, from their deſire of ſpeaking of this bird, have been ſure to ſee it, one at Peru, another in the South Sea, a third in Africa, and ſo on. In ſhort, it has been met with every where: and Buffon, ingenious in finding ſimilitudes, diſcovers it in every very large bird mentioned by theſe men, notwithſtanding the little agreement between their deſcriptions *.

I too might eaſily have ſpoken of a condor; for I have ſeen many large birds of prey, and among thoſe which I have preſerved, there are more than one that I might eaſily have made paſs with the credulous for this carrier-off of ſheep; but, whatever ſuch

* See Buffon's Nat. Hiſt. of Birds, vol. I. article *condor*.

roman-

romancers may ſay, who affirm they have ſeen ſheep taken up into the air by condors, I maintain that there is not a bird known capable of carrying away in its talons an animal of ſo conſiderable a ſize. Be this as it may, the following is a deſcription of my African vulture, which I have not only ſeen, but brought away, and which is ſtill preſerved in my collection.

Its feathers, the general hue of which is a light brown, are of a particular kind on the breaſt, belly, and ſides, where they are of unequal lengths, pointed, curved like the blade of a ſabre, and briſtle up diſtinct from each other. The feathers being thus ſeparated would diſcloſe to view the ſkin on the breaſt, if it were not completely covered with a very thick and beautiful white down, which is eaſily ſeen between the ruffled plumage.

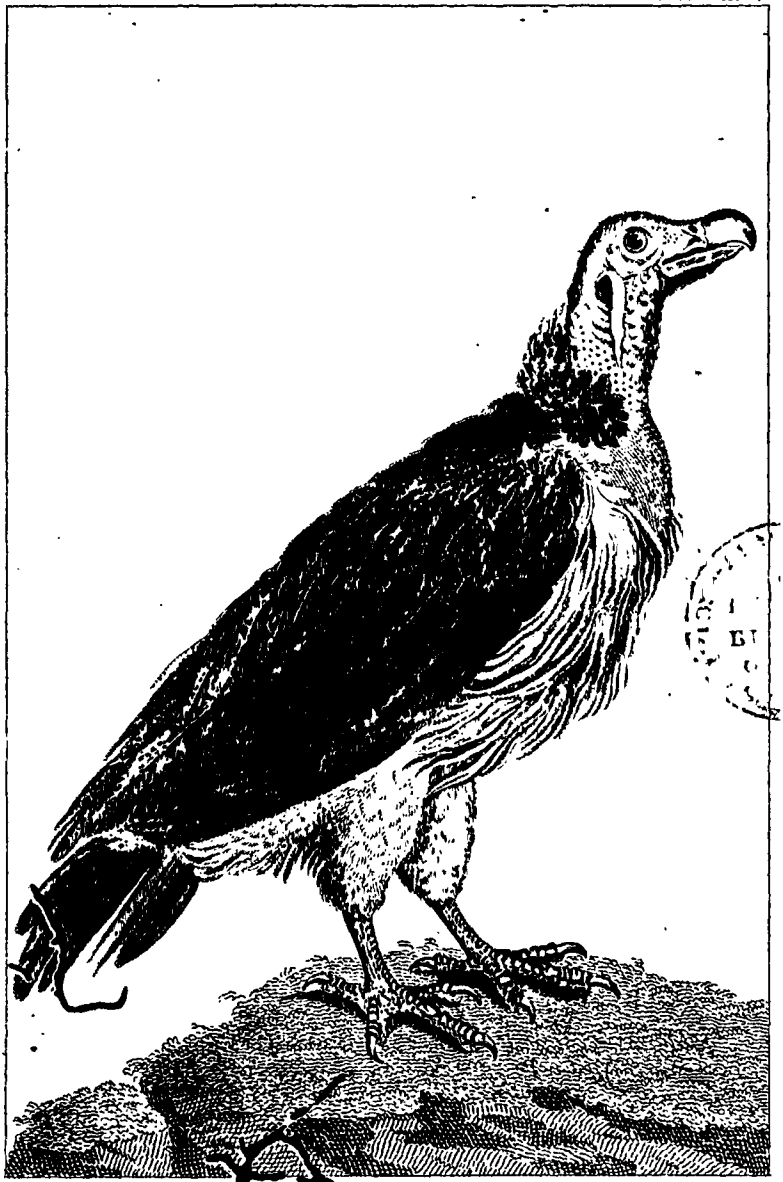
A celebrated naturaliſt has ſaid that "no "bird has eyelaſhes, or eyebrows, or at leaſt "hair round the eyes like that in quadru-"peds." This aſſertion, advanced as a general law of nature, is a miſtake. Not only the bird of which I am ſpeaking has this peculiarity, but we know of many other ſpecies in which

it exiſts; ſuch as in general all the calaos, the ſecretary, and ſeveral other birds of prey. Beſide theſe eyelaſhes, the vulture in queſtion has ſtiff black hairs on its throat. All the head and part of the neck are bare of feathers; and the naked ſkin, which is of a reddiſh colour, is daſhed in certain places with blue, violet, and white. The ear, in its external circumference, is bounded by a prominent ſkin, which forms a ſort of rounded conch, that muſt neceſſarily heighten the faculty of hearing in this ſpecies. This kind of conch is prolonged for ſome inches, and deſcends down the neck, which has induced me to give it the epithet of oricou, a name that I ſhall retain in my hiſtory of birds, where I ſhall give a minute deſcription of it. In the mean time I ſhall inſert here an accurate figure of this rare vulture.

Eager to prepare my oricou, I quitted the iſland before ſunſet, and haſtened to the left bank of the Orange, there to paſs the night. The next day I continued my journey, ſtill following the courſe of the river.

Apprehenſive of wanting food, we carried away with us a portion of our hippopotamus. But

Pl. XXII.



THE ORICOU.

But the precaution was unneceſſary. As we approached the mouth of the river, we found upon it an infinite multitude of grouſe, flamingoes, pintadoes, geeſe, ducks, and other birds of different ſpecies. The number was even ſo great, that we made no proviſion, gave ourſelves no concern in the morning for what we ſhould ſup upon at night.

I found alſo, among theſe birds intended for our table, ſome not unworthy to form a part of my collection. Theſe I prepared on the ſpot; and, that they might not become too troubleſome from the number of the packets, I ſtuffed them into the belly of my oricou, which thus ſerved me as a portmanteau.

The trees were full of a particular kind of monkeys, of which alſo I was deſirous of procuring one for my collection. But theſe animals were too cunning; and, in ſpite of all the ſtratagems we employed, we could never get within ſhot of them.

On our way we met with three Hottentots, who were much ſurpriſed at ſeeing us. One of them ſpoke fluently the Dutch language, having lived a long time in the colony. By them we were informed, that we had at leaſt

four days journey before we could reach the mouth of the river; that there we ſhould run great riſk of being maſſacred by the Boſhmen, who were numerous in all thoſe parts; and that we ſhould find the country, as we proceeded, more arid than any we had yet ſeen. I have always ſuſpected that theſe men were themſelves ſome of the Boſhmen, of whom they wiſhed to inſpire us with fear. They had no doubt their reaſons for endeavouring to prevent us from advancing farther, where their horde probably was; but we could never learn whence they came, or what brought them to the place where they found us. Thus much is certain—the firſt of theſe men that perceived us endeavoured to conceal himſelf, was very uneaſy when we diſcovered him, and it was not till ſome minutes after that we found there were three of them. They had all arrows which were poiſoned, and each carried, beſides, an aſſagay, the point of which was formed of a well-ſharpened fiſh-bone. This adventure excited ſuſpicions in our little party. Too weak to brave every danger, we held a council; and, as the time I had intended to beſtow on our excurſion was expired, we unanimouſly

mouſly agreed to return, and repair directly to the camp the way we had come. As, however, it would have been very imprudent to place any confidence in theſe three men, who appeared to us in ſo very equivocal a light, I compelled them to follow us till we were nearly arrived. In conſequence we ſeized all their arms, promiſing to do them no injury, and that they ſhould infallibly be returned to them. They delivered up their weapons with a good grace, but not without diſplaying ſymptoms of fear, and aſſuring us we had nothing to apprehend, and that they had no ill deſign. Though we profeſſed to believe them, I deemed it prudent to act in this manner, leſt they ſhould be ſpies ſent to get information of our numbers and ſtrength.

I much regretted this termination of my excurſion, by which I was prevented from ſeeing the mouth of Orange-River, the geographical ſituation of which Paterſon has laid down in his travels on the authority of Colonel Gordon. He places it in the latitude of 28° 33′; and its longitude "differs but little," he ſays, "from that of the Cape."

As I had lived in the ſame houſe with

Gordon, and had always obſerved him ſcrupulouſly exact in his reſearches and operations, I confeſs I could find nothing like his ſtyle in this phraſeology; and I was the more ſurpriſed, as, according to all the beſt maps, this pretended *differs but little* is a difference in reality of at leaſt thirty leagues. I ſuppoſe, therefore, Paterſon's memory to have failed him, and that, not recollecting the Colonel's exact expreſſion, he ſubſtituted in its ſtead a vague and erroneous expreſſion of his own.

After declaring to our priſoners that we would ſhoot them without heſitation if they attempted to eſcape, we returned towards the camp the way we had agreed. On the road, the Hottentot of the colony, of whom I have ſpoken, had the appearance of reſuming his uſual tranquillity; but his two comrades diſplayed conſiderable embarraſſment and dejection. At night they ſeemed to take heart a little, converſed with us, and gave themſelves out for Leſs Nimiquas, whoſe language in fact they ſpoke. This did not prevent my watching them: they might be Leſs Nimiquas, and yet at the ſame time be Boſhmen or malefactors; for I have already remarked more than

once,

once, that the Boſhmen in general are vagabonds of every nation, who aſſociate together to rob and plunder all travellers indiſcriminately.

Before we retired to ſleep, I ordered that ſome one ſhould keep watch till midnight, and then that another ſhould take his place till break of day. Klaas took the firſt watch, and was relieved by another, who probably fell aſleep, for towards day one of my people cried to arms, and awakened us in haſte. He was ſtruggling with one of the Leſs Nimiquas, who attempted to take from him his fuſee: but we no ſooner appeared, than the Nimiqua let go his hold, and ran off with ſpeed. His comrade was already gone. The Hottentot we ſtopped. I ordered his hands to be tied behind him, and his legs to be bound, ſo that he could not run away and eſcape from us. While we were thus fettering him, he called to his two comrades with all his might; but they took care not to return. He proteſted his innocence, and declared he had no concern in the plot either of running away or robbing us of our fire-arms. We pretended to believe him; but in the mean time

I did not let him looſe on the credit of his word. I promiſed, however, that no harm ſhould be done him, unleſs an attack were made upon us, when he might be aſſured he ſhould be the firſt victim. This little nocturnal adventure convincing us that we had really reaſon to be apprehenſive of the Boſhmen, we took the reſolution of quitting the trees by the river's ſide and marching acroſs the plain, where, being more open, we ran leſs riſque of being ſurpriſed. Our fettered Hottentot retarded our progreſs conſiderably, ſo that we were obliged to untie his legs, in order to advance with greater ſpeed. When we were four leagues from the camp, night overtook us; and, notwithſtanding our wiſh to arrive there as ſoon as poſſible, we were obliged to halt, being completely fatigued with the journey of the day, in which we had travelled at leaſt a dozen leagues over a ſandy country, and unſheltered from the beams of a ſcorching ſun. Having taken all neceſſary precautions to prevent the eſcape of our priſoner, we paſſed the night in perfect quiet. At day-break, having nothing more to fear from his connexions as we were ſo nigh the camp, I ordered him be unbound

and

and ſet at liberty, adviſing him, however, not to appear again near any place where I was travelling. Reſuming our way, we arrived at the camp at an early hour.

I found there a Kaminouqua chief, a man in years, with about twenty of his people, who waited to pay his reſpects to me, and offer me a live ant-bear, which he had juſt caught. This animal, very difficult to be procured, and by no means common in cabinets of natural hiſtory, hides itſelf in the ground, and hunts only by night. Like thoſe of Guiana and other known countries, it lives entirely on ants. It attacks even the termites in their ſubterranean retreats; and nature has given it long broad claws, a little crooked, both on the fore and hind feet, with which it opens and breaks to pieces their neſts, and with which it digs its own burrow.

In the ſhape as well as in the length of its tongue, which was ſixteen inches, it reſembled ant-bears in general; but in other reſpects it differed from them, particularly in having a ſmooth tail, and its body covered with ſtiff ſhort hair. This animal, which is extremely fat, is conſidered by the Hottentots and planters as delicious food, to which no other

can be compared. The Kaminouquas who brought it to me talked in the ſame ſtyle. I was deſirous of taſting it after it was killed; but I found in it ſuch a muſky flavour, and ſo execrable a taſte of ants, that I was obliged inſtantly to ſpit out the morſel I put into my mouth. What was to me ſo diſagreeable was the very circumſtance that rendered it exquiſite to the palate of the ſavages. Nor is this to be wondered at, ſince, eating with eagerneſs the nymphs of ants, it is natural they ſhould reliſh fleſh that has a ſimilar taſte.

This ant-bear is called in the colonies *erd-verken* (earth hog), and by the Kaminouquas *goup*.

I would gladly have treated the chief and his companions with brandy, by way of teſtifying my gratitude for the preſent they had made me: but I have already ſaid, that, on my return to my camp at Orange-River after an excurſion of four months, my caſks, entruſted to the care of Swanepoel, were almoſt empty. I had filled four ſmall bottles out of what was left by way of reſerve, and the remainder I had given to my people, telling them that they would have no more from me till we arrived

at

at the colony, and that they were at liberty to drink it up at once, or huſband it, juſt as they thought proper.

This ſlender ſtore, which it was neceſſary for me to keep for extraordinary occaſions, I could not think of conſuming at once, by giving a bumper to each of my gueſts. I treated, therefore, only the chief, and four aged Kaminouquas, whom I diſtinguiſhed in the tropp, intending to recompenſe the others by a preſent of ſome toys; and upon this occaſion I witneſſed an action, as I have elſewhere mentioned, that filled me with admiration and eſteem.

The chief, unwilling to enjoy alone a pleaſure not ſhared by his companions, his friends, and brothers, kept in his mouth the liquor he might have ſwallowed, and, approaching his lips to theirs, thus diſtributed it, one after another, among all his people, reſerving for himſelf nothing but the feeling and the flavour. The four old men followed his example; and, by this ſingular mode of ſharing it, every one partook of the gift.

Men of delicacy, people of faſhion, it is to you this noble leſſon is addreſſed! It will excite,

cite, no doubt, your diſguſt. Your cleanly mouths, your ſalve-ſoftened lips, would refuſe this fraternal communication. For my part, I was moved even to tears, and throwing myſelf into the arms of this venerable chief I preſſed him cloſely to my heart.

In the courſe of my laſt day's journey, I had obſerved on the way a tree, with an enormous neſt of thoſe birds to which I have given the appellation of republicans; and I had intended, as ſoon as I arrived at my camp, to ſend and have it cut down, that I might open the hive, and examine its ſtructure in its minuteſt parts. Accordingly I diſpatched a few men with a waggon to bring it to me. When it arrived, I cut it to pieces with a hatchet, and ſaw that the principal and fundamental piece conſiſted of a maſs of Boſhmen's graſs, without any mixture, but ſo compact and firmly knit together as to be impenetrable to the rain. This nucleus is the commencement of the ſtructure; and each bird builds and applies to it its particular neſt. But theſe cells are formed only beneath and around the maſs; the upper ſurface remains void, without, however, being uſeleſs;

for,

for, as it has a projecting rim, and is a little inclined, it ſerves to let the water run off, and preſerves each dwelling from the rain. Figure to yourſelf a huge irregular maſs, the ſummit forming a kind of roof, and all the other parts of the ſurface completely covered with cells ſqueezed one againſt another, and you will have a tolerably accurate idea of theſe ſingular edifices.

Each cell is three or four inches in diameter, which is ſufficient for the bird. But as they are all in contact with one another through the greater part of the ſurface of the maſs, they appear to the eye to form but one building, and are diſtinguiſhable from each other only by a little external aperture, which ſerves as an entrance to the neſt; and even this is ſometimes common to three different neſts, one of which is ſituated at the bottom, and the other two at the ſides.

Paterſon in his travels mentions this ſubject of natural hiſtory; but his attention being too much employed by others which were more particularly intereſting to him, he was unable to examine it with ſufficient care. According to him, the number of cells increaſing in proportion to the increaſe of inhabitants, the old

old ones become "ſleeping-rooms, and ſtreets "of communication, formed by line and level."

No doubt, as the republic increaſes the cells muſt be multiplied alſo. But it is eaſy to imagine, that, as the augmentation can take place only on the ſurface, the new buildings will neceſſarily cover the old ones, which muſt therefore be abandoned.

Should theſe even, contrary to all probability, be able to ſubſiſt, it may be preſumed that the depth of their ſituation, by preventing any circulation and renewal of the air, would render them ſo extremely hot as to be uninhabitable. But while they thus became uſeleſs, they would remain what they were before, real neſts, and change neither into ſtreets nor ſleeping-rooms *.

The large neſt that I examined, was one of the moſt conſiderable I had any where ſeen in the courſe of my journey, and contained three hundred and twenty inhabited cells, which, ſuppoſing a male and female to each, announce a ſociety of ſix hundred and forty individuals,

* We find in Paterſon a particular account of the neſts in queſtion, but nothing that at all anſwers to the idea of ſleeping-rooms, which is probably a miſconception of the French tranſlator. T.

Such a calculation, however, would not be exact. I have ſpoken above of birds among which one male is in common to ſeveral females, becauſe the females are much more numerous than the males. The ſame is the caſe with many other ſpecies, both in the environs of the Cape and in the colony; but it is particularly ſo among the republicans. Whenever I have fired at a flock of theſe birds, I have always killed four times as many females as males.

For the reſt, theſe birds have nothing very remarkable in their plumage. It is an uniform brown grey, diverſified by a few black ſpots on the ſides, and a large patch of the ſame colour on the throat. The male is a little larger than the female; in other reſpects they exactly reſemble each other.

It often happens that one republic is expelled by another. This may eaſily be conceived; and I have already had occaſion to remark, that I had ſeen one of their towns become the conqueſt of a troop of little parrots.

The birds that commit theſe depredations are thoſe which, like the barbets, pies, titmice, and

and the parrots I have juſt mentioned, poſſeſs a ſuperiority in offenſive weapons, by the ſtrength of their bills, which the weak and unfortunate proprietors cannot reſiſt. But among theſe intruders are none but ſuch as make their neſts in holes, or the hollows of trees, like the ſpecies I have enumerated.

The republicans, not being known in the colonies, have no Dutch name. The Nimiquas call them in their language *anagues*, with the clapping prefixed.

I remained five weeks at the hermitage of Schoenmaker. At length I quitted it, to viſit a horde of Leſs Nimiquas, about five leagues from our camp, where a grand hunt of ſpring-bock antelopes was to take place. The chief had invited us to be of the party, not doubting but our fire-arms would contribute greatly to its ſucceſs. I accepted the invitation with pleaſure, as much with a view to render them a ſervice, as again to ſee a hunt of the nature of thoſe which I have already had occaſion to mention. It was poſſible, too, this might preſent me with ſome new circumſtances and particular manœuvres. The party was appointed for the next day; and all were buſy,

men, women, and children, in making the neceſſary preparations.

At the entrance of a defile formed by two hills, two rows of ſtakes were planted; which, placed at a ſmall diſtance from each other like the trees of a grove, gradually diverged as the row lengthened, till they reached a conſiderable way into the plain. The ſtakes were three feet high, and had a thong paſſed along their tops, from one to another. To this thong, here and there, oſtrich feathers were hung.

But as it would have been impoſſible to have procured thongs enough to extend the whole length of the two rows, where they were wanting, the ſtakes were furniſhed with bundles of oſtrich feathers, wings of birds, ends of tails, pieces of ſkins, and even whole kroſſes; any thing, in ſhort, that it was thought might ſerve to frighten the game.

The ſnare began at the very opening of the defile, where were dug, chequerwiſe, about twenty pits, ten feet deep by ſix or ſeven wide, and covered on the ſurface ſo as to be completely hidden, though ſo ſlightly that the leaſt weight would break in the covering. The

chace

chace conſiſted in making the antelopes enter between the two rows of ſtakes; once there, they were eaſily driven into the defile where the pits were dug. Such as paſſed over theſe pits without tumbling in fell into other ambuſcades, where the people of the horde waited for them, lying flat on their bellies, to ſhoot them with their arrows the moment they iſſued from the defile.

The whole of the day was employed in conveying to the place and erecting the apparatus I have deſcribed; and the next day, at three in the morning, we ſet off for the rendezvous. As it was at ſome diſtance, we did not arrive there till break of day. I mounted one of my horſes, and Klaas another; and I was followed by ſome of my hunters, and all my dogs in their leaſhes. Several of the ſavages of the horde remained with me, while the reſt placed themſelves in ambuſcade along the paliſades, to prevent the antelopes from leaping over.

As the ſun was riſing we perceived, about half a league from us, a conſiderable herd of ſpring-bocks chaſed by a party of the ſavages. I directed my people to advance in file along

one

one of its flanks, that thereby the herd might imperceptibly be driven between the ſtakes. We ſoon got near, and began to preſs them more cloſely. At length, when I ſaw that thoſe who took the lead were fairly entered into the tunnel, I and Klaas drove full gallop after their rear, ſhouting aloud, and firing our fuſees and piſtols, while my party ſeconded us by the diſcharge of theirs, and the others by their cries.

This noiſe was a ſignal for the ſavages concealed near the ſtakes, who all roſe up, making at the ſame time ſuch a hideous yell, that the uproar became tremendous. The animals, frightened and urged on all ſides, preſſed diſorderly upon one another, as they fled in a column, and exhibited an amuſing ſpectacle.

Curious to know what paſſed at the head and near the pits, I galloped thither, expecting to find them filled by the antelopes tumbling in in heaps. But I was deceived. Theſe animals are extremely cunning. The leading ones only fell into the trap; which the reſt, as ſoon as they diſcovered it, eſcaped by leaping over.

For more than half an hour that the paſſage

continued, this leaping ceaſed not a moment; and never did I witneſs a ſpectacle ſimilar to what was afforded by theſe thouſands of animals, running like the wind, and half of them at a time in the air.

Some were killed by our ſhot, ſome by our dogs, and others ſtifled in the throng; but thirty-ſeven only were found in the pits; and even moſt of theſe were in the firſt holes. The Nimiquas alſo had wounded ſeveral with their poiſoned arrows; and, though theſe fled away with the reſt, they hoped ſoon to find them.

This hunt did not at all ſtrike me as being very ſucceſsful. Conſidering, indeed, the preparations that were made, and the quantity of game we ſaw, I even thought it a bad one. The people, however, were of a different opinion, and told me that ſo wonderful a one had not been known in the memory of man.

They commonly deemed themſelves fortunate if they procured a dozen antelopes. Frequently they had even the vexation not to get more than a ſingle one; which happened ſometimes when the herd was ſmall, or when, the

number

number of people employed to ſtart and lie in wait to frighten the game being too few, the animals, leſs terrified, fled with leſs precipitation. In ſuch caſes the leading antelope only fell into the ſnare; the reſt, warned by his fall, leaped over the pits. In fact, I had perceived in the preſent hunt the truth of this remark; and it may be inferred, that our ſucceſs had been chiefly owing to my guns and my dogs.

Our game was now to be conveyed to the kraal; but the day being too far advanced, we agreed to defer this buſineſs till the next day, and to ſpend the night on the field of battle. We ſent, however, for ſome oxen. At day-break they arrived; and we returned to the horde in triumph, attended by the produce of our chace.

This was ſufficiently abundant to give every family reaſon to rejoice. Equal portions were diſtributed to each, and part was employed to furniſh out a regale, to which the horde added ſome fat ſheep; for among the ſavages there can be no feaſting without fat, and particularly that of mutton. The feaſt was concluded by a dance, which continued all night; the party

not breaking up till the ſun made its appearance.

While they were all preparing to ſleep, I took leave of my gueſts, and directed my ſteps acroſs the long Valley of Spring-bocks. The valley had no name; but I ſo called it on account of a vaſt herd of theſe animals, which I found there, and which was more numerous than any I had ever ſeen. I am not afraid of exceeding the truth, if I ſay it was compoſed of ſixty or eighty thouſand. In ſhort, the whole day was ſpent in travelling ſeven leagues, and all the way we ſaw nothing but ſpring-bocks before us, and on every ſide. They ſeemed to fill the valley and block up the paſſage againſt us.

The next morning we were able to advance no more than three leagues; but it was for another reaſon. In paſſing a difficult road, one of my waggons was overturned. The pole was broken, as were three ſpokes of the hind wheels; and, to increaſe our misfortune, we were obliged to unload it before we could get it up again.

The loſs of the pole was eaſily ſupplied, as I had

I had a ſpare one under each waggon: but it required ſome time to repair the wheel; and, the place not being convenient for the purpoſe, I deferred it till the next day. A few branches were interwoven between the ſpokes of the wheels to ſupport the broken ones; the waggon was lightened, by diſtributing part of its load between the other two; and in this ſtate we were able to proceed four leagues farther, and arrive on the banks of a river, which afforded us a favourable ſituation for our encampment, and the repair of the wheel of the carriage. It was the 12th of July: a memorable day—which I ſhall never forget, as I was then firſt attacked by a diſeaſe, which had nearly coſt me my life: it was memorable alſo on another account, and I ſhall always recall it to mind with ſecret ſatisfaction, for it procured me, the pleaſure of doing a good action, and rendering a whole family happy.

On my arrival I felt myſelf not well; I had a ſhivering, and a great heavineſs in my head. But theſe ſymptoms did not alarm me, as I aſcribed them to the extreme fatigue I had undergone in my excurſion towards the north of Orange-River, together with that of my

laſt hunt. With this idea, ſuppoſing that all I wanted was reſt, I went and lay down in my waggon, in order to relieve myſelf by ſleep—which, however, I was not fated to find.

Klaas in the mean while directed my tent to be pitched. As this was doing, he perceived at a diſtance a waggon that appeared to bend its courſe toward us, and he ran to inform me of the circumſtance as a piece of good news. More than a year had elapſed ſince I had received any letters from the Cape. I was totally ignorant of what had happened there ſince my departure; and theſe ſtrangers would perhaps bring me information.

This thought made me forget my illneſs. I leaped inſtantly out of bed, and ran to meet them.

The waggon was drawn by a team of ten oxen, under the guidance of five Hottentots. Three lean cows and a few ſheep followed them. The travellers themſelves were four in number, a man, his wife, and two children. But men, waggon, and animals, indicated extreme poverty, as did the garments that covered even the maſter and miſtreſs.

I was involuntarily moved with pity at the ſight,

ſight. They on the contrary teſtified the moſt lively joy at ſeeing me. Their eyes, their looks, their motions, every thing declared it. The man and his wife in particular could not expreſs their ſatisfaction. The meeting me, they ſaid, was the height of felicity; and they ſhould conſider this day as the moſt fortunate of their lives.

Having never ſeen them before, it was impoſſible for me to conceive the reaſon of this joy, which was ſo ſtrikingly contraſted by their indigence and rags. I was eager to know it; yet, till we arrived at the camp, and their waggon was drawn up by mine, I could not well aſk them to ſatisfy my curioſity. I then conducted them to my tent, offered them ſome refreſhment, which they accepted, and we entered into converſation.

The huſband, who, as well as his wife, was born in Africa, was one of thoſe weak and inconſiderate men, of whom we meet ſo many every day, and who, deſirous of eaſe and the comforts of this life, but naturally indolent, ſeek to enrich themſelves in ſome ſhort way, that they may enjoy the more ſpeedily happineſs and quiet. This man, ſeeing no

mode in the colony of making a fortune ſo rapidly as he wiſhed, and having heard of the acquiſitions that had been made among the Nimiquas by certain individuals, took it into his head to viſit them in like manner; flattering himſelf, that in their country he ſhould meet with what he had in vain ſought for at home, and never once dreaming that wherever activity, induſtry, and good ſenſe are, qualities to which he appeared to have no claim, there alſo fortune is to be found and no where elſe. The wonders of the Nimiqua land he had long heard of, and he had often been adviſed to ſettle in this pretended paradiſe, where all the wealth of the globe, and all its moſt valuable productions, awaited his coming.

Several, it is true, while they confirmed the fables that prevailed reſpecting the wealth of this country, ſo abundant in mines of gold, had terrified him at the ſame time by the numerous obſtacles which they told him he would have to contend with. They ſpoke of Boſhmen, tigers, lions, and wild beaſts of every kind; and theſe, they ſaid, were what prevented the planters from ſettling there.

For a time, theſe fabulous terrors had rendered

dered him wavering: but the thirſt of gold had at length prevailed; and the almoſt certainty of finding it had led him thus far on his way. Five wretched Hottentots attended him in this weariſome pilgrimage.

By report my name had been known to him in the colony, and he had juſt learned that I had traverſed the country near the Orange. In conſequence he inquired after my route, and directed his courſe ſo as to fall in with me. Chance had favoured him beyond his expectations: and thence aroſe the extraordinary joy he teſtified at ſeeing me.

The converſation, as will readily be ſuppoſed, almoſt wholly turned on the land of promiſe towards which he was travelling—that wonderful land, ſo fertile in gold, ſilver, and rubies, that he was to pick them up by handfuls along the rocks and in the rivers! He talked with rapture of theſe imaginary treaſures. Perſuaded, no doubt, that my waggons were loaded with them, he expected from my civility that I ſhould direct him to their beds; and had depended on obtaining from me all the information he wanted.

I allowed him to vent at his eaſe all the follies

lies with which his head had been ſtuffed, and made it a point not to interrupt him. The idea of opening his eyes and deſtroying hopes which, mad and chimerical as they were, rendered him happy, was abſolutely painful to me. To diſſipate his illuſion, and tell him the truth, was to render him miſerable: yet was it neceſſary to be done. I ordered, therefore, all the ſpecimens of minerals, all the ſtones and coloured cryſtals, which I and my people had collected, to be placed before him; and ſhowing him this ſuppoſed wealth, the nature and value of which he might himſelf examine and appreciate, "This," ſaid I to him, "is what "you will find."

The exhibition was a thunderſtroke to this deluded and happy couple. They ran their eyes over the different ſubſtances, and then looked at each other with an air of dejection and amazement which it is eaſier to imagine than deſcribe. Yet, notwithſtanding this mode of convincing them, they ſtill appeared at intervals perplexed and undecided in their minds. Becauſe I did not ſhow them money ready coined, it did not follow that nothing to coin it with was to be found in the country. The

illuſion

illuſion every moment returned to their minds: they ſet againſt my teſtimony the unanimous aſſertions of the planters, and the conſtant tradition of fourſcore years. Soon, however, the curtain dropped again; the truth once more ſtared them in the face; and the falſe opinion they had conceived from what had been told them was at length completely diſſipated.

To ſuffer them any longer to remain in this painful ſtate would have been cruel in me. Diſappointment was already figured on their countenances, and their fixed dejected look denoted how profound was their ſorrow. I had deſtroyed all their hopes; they were too well convinced for their happineſs; and I thought it time to revive their ſpirits, by ſubſtituting rational ſchemes for wild and ſenſeleſs chimeras.

Ignorance miſrepreſents in its accounts the ill as much as the good; becauſe, unable to eſtimate the value of either, it exaggerates both. When imaginary treaſures had been announced to theſe people, they had at the ſame time been terrified by dangers equally unfounded. It was neceſſary therefore, in the firſt place, to diſſipate their fears, and repreſent the country

to

to which they were going, juſt as it was, without any deception.

Relating to them nothing but what I had recently ſeen with my own eyes, they could not avoid placing ſome confidence in my teſtimony. I accordingly gave them a brief account of every thing moſt remarkable that had happened to me in the different parts of the country, ſcrupulouſly delineating both the good and the bad, without concealing any thing of either. I then adviſed them to give up the mad and chimerical ideas which had engendered in them ſuch covetous deſires; and told them, that if, inſtead of loſing time in ſeeking gold and gems in a country where they were not to be found, they would form a ſettlement there, they might bring up their children with eaſe, and live in happy and peaceful competence.

Many prejudices reſpecting the ſavages had been inſtilled into their minds. On this point I undeceived them; and, citing my own example, I gave them to underſtand what great ſervices they might expect from theſe people, if they would form like me an intimacy with them, gain their favour by a few acts of friendſhip,

ſhip, and purſue the conduct which I had found ſo ſucceſsful. Finally, though it was in complete oppoſition to their ideas, I adviſed them, not without regret, to avoid all intercourſe with certain white men whom they would find in their neighbourhood. Theſe, I aſſured them, were their real enemies, the only ones they had to fear, and againſt whom they muſt always be on their guard.

During the whole of my diſcourſe, the eyes of the woman were attentively fixed on me; and I ſaw, by the alteration of her countenance, the profound impreſſion it made upon her. The great reſpect and high eſteem ſhe entertained for her huſband, however, occaſionally intervened to deſtroy this impreſſion. She endeavoured to diſcover in his looks what he thought upon the ſubject, that ſhe might thereby determine what to think herſelf. If joy or hope were expreſſed on his countenance, hers expanded at the ſame moment: if he looked thoughtful and uneaſy, her features partook of the change, and ſhe became uneaſy too. So much love for ſo much wretchedneſs rendered her affection reſpectable in my eyes.

The man appeared to be convinced of the

wholeſomeneſs of my advice, and confeſſed that, if we deſire wealth, it is a more certain way to take the trouble to acquire it by our labour, than to endeavour to find it ready made to our hands. But one great difficulty ſtood in his way; which was his poverty.

Poor and helpleſs, what would become of him in the wild and uncultivated deſert to which he was repairing? Without merchandiſe, how could he hope to gain the friendſhip of the neighbouring hordes, and form a connection with them? In fine, without implements, without utenſils, without furniture, or materials to make any, without proviſion, and in ſhort deſtitute of every thing, how could he form a ſettlement, and begin a way of life for which he was totally unprepared? The moſt important articles belonging to this travelling family were a muſket in no very good condition, and a ſmall trunk, about two feet ſquare, which contained the whole of their wardrobe.

Good advice, well-timed, has no doubt its value; but the poor, ſaid I to myſelf, want more than advice: and in conſequence, to give theſe pilgrims a proof how much I was intereſted in their welfare, I deſcribed to them

the

the little hermitage of Schoenmaker, in which I had paſſed a few weeks ſo pleaſantly. I ſpoke alſo of the ſmiling valley and delightful wood in which it was ſituated; and I omitted at the ſame time neither the beautiful rivulet that ran by the houſe, nor the little garden in which ſeveral of the culinary vegetables of Europe were ſtill to be found, nor the proximity of the river, which would afford the amuſement of fiſhing, and the advantage of hunting the hippopotamus. Finally, though this pleaſant eſtate did not belong to me, and I had not in reality the leaſt title to it, I took upon me to make them an offer of it, and invited them to take poſſeſſion, aſſuring them that no one would diſpute their claim.

I intended, indeed, to acquaint Schoenmaker with the circumſtance, and had no doubt but he would approve of what I had done. And as to himſelf, I purpoſed by means of the friendſhip of Serrurier and Gordon, when I arrived at the Cape, to obtain his pardon. My expectations were not diſappointed. I have already ſaid that I accompliſhed my purpoſe, and reſtored to the colony an honeſt man, who has ſince become a very ſucceſsful planter.

The

The man and his wife embraced my offer with thoſe expreſſions of gratitude which an important ſervice is ſure to draw from ſuſceptible minds; and I concluded with telling them, that to arrive at the valley and the houſe in queſtion would be a buſineſs attended with little difficulty, as they would only have to follow the traces of my waggons.

This converſation had occupied a conſiderable portion of my evening. Before we ſeparated for the night, I treated the travellers with tea and coffee; and they retired to their beds, joy ſparkling in their countenances as they quitted me, at which I confeſs I was ſenſibly affected.

For my part, I went and threw myſelf again on the mattreſs in the waggon. My illneſs and headach however were ſo increaſed, that I could not ſleep for a ſingle moment during the whole night. I ought to have felt ſome anxiety about the cauſe of this ſleepleſſneſs; but I ſtill deceived myſelf, and aſcribed it to the emotion this ſingular adventure had occaſioned me.

The next morning, my viſitors came to tell me that, ſtill more confirmed in their reſolution of embracing my propoſal than on the preceding evening, they were about to prepare for

for their departure: upon which I gave them every information reſpecting the people of the country, and the advantage they might derive from them for the improvement of their ſituation.

Reſolved however, notwithſtanding this advantage, to render their abode as agreeable as was in my power, I intended to beſtow on them a ſmall ſtock of ſuch things as would be neceſſary, or at leaſt uſeful, to them in their new ſettlement. I had ſtill by me ſome ſalt proviſion, and particularly the fleſh of the laſt hippopotamus we had killed. With this fleſh I ordered a leathern bag to be filled, and carried to their waggon. To this I added a few toys, ſome braſs-wire for making bracelets, ſome nails, powder, ſhot, and indeed every thing I thought capable of contributing to their pleaſure or their ſecurity, and enabling them to trade for what they might want. Laſtly, I gave them four ſheep, a goat with kid, a cock and hen from my brood of chickens, and the youngeſt of my dogs.

The good people ſcarcely knew how to expreſs their gratitude.

"I am now about to leave you," ſaid the huſband, "and perhaps I ſhall never ſee you

" again: but while I have a ſpark of life re-
" maining in my body, I ſhall never forget
" you, or ceaſe to bleſs your name. I was
" going to expoſe myſelf to periſh with hun-
" ger and deſpair, and you have ſtopped me
" on the border of the gulph. I was without
" reſource, and you have rendered me happy.
" Bleſſed be the day on which I met with
" you! Every year I will repair to this place
" with my family, to celebrate it on the banks
" of this very river, to pour out my vows for
" you, and recall to my remembrance ſo im-
" portant a benefit."

While in Africa, I gave to the brook by which I was encamped when the planter of whom I have been ſpeaking met with me the name of *Riviere de la Rencontre* (river of our meeting): but, after my arrival in Europe, I changed it to that of Laborde, who took ſuch extraordinary care in finiſhing the map of my travels, as a ſlight teſtimony of gratitude, which I addreſſed to this friend at the very juncture when hordes of civilized robbers murdered him, amidſt the heap of victims ſacrificed to the vileſt of mankind by the moſt cowardly of men.

While the oxen of my new acquaintance were

were putting to his waggon, I ordered mine to be yoked alſo. My pains hourly increaſed. They had already very much weakened me, and I began to be alarmed. What would become of me, ſhould I be attacked with a ſerious malady! I had but one reſource, that of reaching the colony, if poſſible, before it declared itſelf.

I ſet off, therefore, immediately; and, being too feeble to mount on horſeback, I at firſt lay at my length in the waggon. But it was not poſſible for me to bear its motion. My headach was ſo violent, and the jolting gave me ſo much pain, that I found it neceſſary to leave it and mount one of my horſes, notwithſtanding my weakneſs. In this manner I arrived at the mountains of Kauſſi, near the brook which, taking its riſe in theſe mountains, bears the ſame name.

I longed to alight, that I might lie down. The fatigue of the journey and the heat of the day had made me worſe. I felt myſelf in a burning fever, and experienced extreme pain in ſwallowing, which I at firſt ſuppoſed to be a common ſore-throat, but which, in the courſe of the night, from the inflammation of the

pharynx and the ſwelling of the tonſils, ſhowed itſelf to be a quinſy.

I thought myſelf loſt. This diſeaſe in Africa is almoſt always mortal, and, beſides being more painful than in Europe, is of much longer continuance. What could I do in ſuch alarming circumſtances, not only unſkilled as I was in phyſic, but deſtitute of the remedies which the planters employed in ſuch caſes?

My Hottentots, to whom all diſeaſes are the ſame, and who conſequently have but one method of cure, were deſirous of employing it on the preſent occaſion. It conſiſted in dipping napkins in boiling milk, and applying them ſcalding hot round my neck. This treatment, which is their ſovereign panacea, their univerſal remedy, was obſerved for three days together. For three days I had the civility to ſuffer myſelf thus to be burnt; but at length, fatigued and tortured to no purpoſe, I refuſed to ſubmit any longer to the pain, and left myſelf entirely to nature.

My ſituation was become deplorable. I could ſwallow nothing but a few drops of very weak

weak tea, and this with great difficulty. My tongue and throat were ſo ſwelled, that I ſpoke only by ſigns. At length my reſpiration became ſo painful, and was ſo much impeded, that I every moment expected to be ſuffocated.

The conſternation of my people became general. Klaas and Swanepoel alone entered my tent; and they attended me alternately. But when either of them came to me, I immediately ſaw the heads of all the reſt collected together at the entrance of my tent, and ſtretched out as far as poſſible, endeavouring to read in his looks what they had to hope or fear.

Aſſuredly, if ever there was a moment in my life when I thought myſelf near my end, it was this. Thus then two long, laborious, and dangerous journeys were to terminate! Unable to ſpeak, and to give any orders about my collections, what would become of the fruit of all my fatigues!

Had the fever that conſumed me been accompanied with delirium, and had I loſt the ſenſe of my ſituation, and the painful anxiety inſeparable from it, I ſhould have been leſs pitiable: but, to my extreme misfortune, my

ſenſes were in nowiſe deranged; I ſaw death approaching with ſlow ſteps, and experienced all its horrors.

I had given myſelf over for near a week, when Swanepoel came to announce to me the arrival of ſome Leſs Nimiquas of a neighbouring horde. Theſe good ſavages had heard of my diſorder; and, in conſequence of the friendſhip for me with which I had the felicity to inſpire their nation, had come to offer to effect my cure, and propoſe a remedy, for the ſucceſs of which they would pledge themſelves, they ſaid, if I would but conſent to entruſt myſelf in their hands.

Could a dying man, ſo circumſtanced, liſten with indifference to the voice that promiſed him life? Beſides, had poiſon been offered me, my ſufferings had continued ſo long, and were become ſo inſupportable, that from wearineſs, and to put an end to them, I ſhould inſtantly have taken it. I made a ſign, therefore, that I conſented; and my phyſicians prepared the remedy.

This too was a hot topical application; but, inſtead of being made of milk like the former, it conſiſted of a certain herb; and, beſide the cataplaſm,

cataplaſm, the juice of the herb was to be uſed as a gargle. I was prejudiced againſt thoſe burning collars with which my neck was again to be ſurrounded; and, when I ſaw Klaas bringing me this new-prepared one, I felt, I confeſs, ſome repugnance. But the gargle had ſuch an agreeable ſmell, its taſte was ſo ſweet and balſamic, and nature appeared to give me ſo ſudden and powerful an inclination for it, that one of the remedies induced me to ſubmit to the other.

The cataplaſm was renewed ſeveral times in the night; and I repeated the gargle ſtill more frequently. At length, when day appeared, to my great joy I found myſelf eaſed. I could already breathe with more freedom; the ſwelling and inflammation of the pharynx were abated; every moment I continued to get better; at length I was able even to ſwallow, and then by order of my Eſculapius I was to take cold milk.

In a ſtate of continual fever as I was, this cold milk appeared to my European prejudices a ſtrange preſcription: but what were prejudices to confidence founded on ſucceſs! I reſigned myſelf blindly to the guidance of my

phyſician, and I had every reaſon to applaud myſelf for doing ſo.

By the third day I found myſelf cured. My quinſy was gone, my fever had left me, the ſwelling had ſubſided, and my throat was free. I had nothing of my diſeaſe remaining but an extreme weakneſs, which did not prevent me from feeling myſelf to be out of danger, and how much I was indebted to the individual who had been the inſtrument of my cure. I deſired to ſee him, and he was introduced to me.

It was the firſt interview between us, the firſt time of his entering my tent. Different from the phyſicians of Europe, who muſt examine the tongue and feel the pulſe, he was ſatisfied with enquiring after my ſtate, and preſcribing for me on the report of another—a method which with him ſucceeds in this inſtance had proved to be ſufficient.

He was a little man, not differing in external appearance from the reſt of his comrades; and with regard to the mode of treating my diſorder, he knew no more than they all knew. Accordingly, regardleſs of the honour of having performed a cure and obtained the

the confidence of a white man, he ſeemed ſenſible only of the pleaſure of having reſtored me to health.

During the whole time of my illneſs, my people had all ſtrove to pay me the greateſt reſpect and attention. From the moment they began to be alarmed for me, they had all abſtained from ſinging or dancing. I had not even heard ſo much as a laugh. The ſame attention continued during my convaleſcence, without my finding it neceſſary to iſſue a ſingle order on the ſubject: and theſe fruits of the friendſhip they bore me were ſo many delicious enjoyments to my heart.

My ſtore of proviſion being greatly diminiſhed, and, in my preſent condition, none of what remained being fit for my uſe, I felt how much I was indebted to Swanepoel for ſetting my hen during my four months abſence from him, and thus procuring me chickens. Theſe ſerved to make me broth, or to roaſt; and, when they were gone, my hunters took upon them to ſupply me with partridges and other birds of a ſimilar kind.

As ſoon as I was able to riſe, I made a point of quitting my tent, and taking a walk, or

ſome

ſome gentle exerciſe, to recover my ſtrength. I had deſired already to ſee my phyſician; my firſt excurſion was to gather and examine with him the plant he had employed in my cure.

Nothing in the country is more common: it is to be met with every where; and he ſhowed it to me all round my camp. It is a ſpecies of ſage, growing about two feet high, and nearly of the colour of our common ſage, but with a ſmoother leaf. I could not be certain of the colour of the flower, becauſe it was the ſeaſon when it begins to wither and dry; but I believe it to be blue.

Swanepoel, when he ſaw the plant, conceived it to be perfectly familiar to him. He aſſured me it was equally common in the colony and at the Cape, where it was known by the Dutch name of *ſaaly* (ſage). But botaniſts have compriſed ſo many different plants under the general name of ſage, that I know not to what family the *ſaaly* of the Cape belongs.

As the planters never employ it in ſore throats, which are one of the ſcourges of their climate, it is probable they are unacquainted with its virtues: or it is more likely that Swanepoel, miſled by ſome external reſemblance

blance in the two plants, was deceived, and that the *ſaaly* of the Nimiquas and that of the planters are not the ſame.

On the other hand, I am induced to believe that the latter differs from the common ſage of Europe both in taſte and in ſmell; and my reaſon is this: Among the nations of Europe that trade to China, there is one in particular, that, purchaſing there a large quantity of tea, gives in exchange for it the leaves of ſage. This plant, in conſequence of the value placed by the people of every country on what is brought from a great diſtance, is ſought by the Chineſe with ſtill more avidity than even theirs by certain inhabitants of Europe; and this is accordingly a trade in which cent per cent may eaſily be gained.

Now this ſage, ſold at ſo high a price at the farther extremity of Aſia, is purchaſed in our ſouthern provinces, though the French, to their ſhame be it ſpoken, are ignorant of the circumſtance. The immenſe profit made by this trade is well known at the Cape, where *ſaaly* is in great abundance: whence I conclude, that if this *ſaaly* had the qualities of the French ſage, the nation I have alluded to would

would export it in preference to China, ſince it would gain thereby ſtill greater profit.

Be this, however, as it may, the plant that cured me of my quinſy is equally efficacious in the cure of wounds; at leaſt ſo my Eſculapius aſſured me. But he added, that, to promote digeſtion in the wound, and bring it into a healing ſtate, a certain quality of ſome kind of fat muſt be added to the cataplaſm, in order to give it a degree of unctuouſneſs, without which it would be of no avail.

Is it not inconceivably ſtrange, that, among the countleſs multitude of plants which cover the ſurface of the globe, ſo ſmall a number ſhould be known? And that in the moſt complete and amply furniſhed botanic garden ſcarcely three hundred and fifty are to be found, that afford food or medicine, either to man, or the animals he has domeſticated? But what ought ſtill more to aſtoniſh us is, that among this ſmall number, if there be any of real importance to us, we have been almoſt always indebted to ſavages, or even to the beaſts, for their diſcovery.

My diſorder and convaleſcence had continued twenty days. During this time, my people, having

having never gone out of ſight of my tent, and conſequently having killed no game, had been reduced to live on my ſheep. One only was left of my whole flock; ſo that I found myſelf under the neceſſity of procuring a new ſtock.

Fortunately, two or three leagues from my camp, and alſo near the river Kauſſi, was a horde that I had viſited the year before, capable of furniſhing me with the ſheep I wanted. Being perfectly recovered, I could eaſily reach it in a few hours; and accordingly I repaired thither, after having rewarded, to the utmoſt of my power, the Nimiqua to whom I was indebted for my life.

The chief came to meet me. On his breaſt hung a gorget, and under his kroſs he had a brais-headed cane, the end of which only was viſible. By theſe badges of ſlavery and authority, which announced a Hottentot captain inſtalled by the Government, I viſibly perceived that I was entering the colony: but, by the humble and ſubmiſſive air of the man, I ſaw ſtill more clearly, that he was a being accuſtomed to cringe and obey. The tone of ſupplication he aſſumed on accoſting me led me to ſuppoſe

at once, that he came to complain either of his ſubjects or of his neighbours. I was miſtaken in one point only. He complained of both.

The planters againſt whom he brought accuſations were Van der Weſthuyſen, the father of Klaas Baſter, with whom I had lodged on my journey, and Engelbrecht, his brother-in-law. The cattle-keepers of the horde had negligently ſuffered ſome of their beaſts to eſcape; and theſe beaſts having rambled into the territories of Van der Weſthuyſen, he and his daughter, of whom I have ſpoken elſewhere, had ſhot at and killed them.

In this violent and unjuſt proceeding, I perfectly recogniſed the ſpirit of the planters: though, in this inſtance, it muſt be confeſſed, the keepers had been guilty of the firſt fault. Naſeep, which was the name of the imbecile chief, taking upon himſelf to reprove the keepers, they had ſnatched from him, in their rage, his ſtaff of authority, and, ſeverely beating him, had broken it about his ſhoulders. Such is the reſpect which the hordes under the dominion of the Dutch government pay to the captains that are appointed to rule over them.

Poor

Poor Naſeep drew from beneath his kroſs the cane that had been given him for another purpoſe, and I found that half of it only was left.

A moment after, the people of the horde came in their turn to complain of him. He then accuſed them all without exception; and a terrible uproar inſtantly began. Amidſt this confuſion of charges, it was impoſſible to underſtand a word that was ſaid. All I could infer was, that every body was to blame. But what was I to do? I was no longer in a free country; and wherever a ſovereign authority ſubſiſts, its laws, good or bad, ought to be reſpected. Complaints were addreſſed to me on all hands; yet, in my ſituation, I could liſten to them only, in order to report them to the government. In vain did they teſtify their reſpect for me; having nothing but advice to give, what fruits could I expect from my interference?

If it be true, that the happineſs of a people tends to render them more mild and ſocial in their manners, it is equally true, that oppreſſion muſt ſour the temper, and from human beings change them into beaſts. The diſcord and enmity that prevailed among theſe unhappy ſava-

ges

ges appeared to me perfectly excuſable. Perſecuted by the neighbouring planters, who, having fire-arms, made an ill uſe of them againſt the natives; wretched, and plundered beſides; how could they avoid being irritated by ſuch multiplied inſults and acts of injuſtice? In their rage they laid the blame upon their chief, who was innocent; quarrelled among themſelves; and became ſo many madmen towards each other.

The people of the horde did not merely complain of their cattle having been killed or ſtolen; they had been robbed alſo of part of their territory by force. The vaſt domain occupied by Van der Weſthuyſen and his family, as well as that on which his brother-in-law Engelbrecht had ſettled, were uſurped property from which theſe planters had driven away the horde; and, not yet ſatisfied, they were daily endeavouring to ſeize on what remained, particularly the Fountain of Lilies, near which was their kraal.

With this view, they haraſſed and tormented them inceſſantly: hoping that, by dint of perſecution, they ſhould weary them out, and ſo compel them to remove and ſet-

tle

tle in ſome other place. Thus, after a thouſand vexations, and after loſing part of their cattle, theſe poor ſavages ſaw themſelves on the point of being driven from the land in which they had been born, and reduced to ſeek a diſtant aſylum, where they might remain unknown to the whites, whom they had ſo many reaſons to execrate.

My heart bled at the relation of ſuch atrocities: but ſtill what could I do? The horde requeſted me to wait upon the two uſurping families, and talk to them upon the ſubject. This I readily promiſed; though I was certain beforehand it would anſwer no purpoſe.

And here it will probably be aſked, Why did not Naſcep addreſs himſelf directly to the Government, to obtain juſtice and reſtitution? I put to him the very ſame queſtion: and the anſwer he gave was ſuch as I expected, and which proved, that, if Adminiſtration have promulgated laws in favour of the ſavages, it has not yet taken the neceſſary means to enſure their execution.

Suppoſing the people of a horde deſirous of making a complaint, and not deterred by the

diſtance and the difficulty of a long journey, what hope could they have, on their arrival at the Cape, of their charges reaching a Government ſurrounded entirely with whites, almoſt all of whom, living on abuſes and intereſted in deceiving it, would intercept the truth in its way, or tranſmit it completely changed and diſfigured?

Beſides, from another kind of oppreſſion ſtill more odious, it is almoſt impoſſible for the unhappy ſuppliants to reach the town. The planters, having all a common intereſt, ſupport one another. Whatever injuſtice one of them may have committed, he is ſure of being abetted by the reſt. The deputies from the horde, ſent to complain of him, would be obſtructed at every ſtep. They would be purſued from plantation to plantation; ſnares would be laid for them; and, if they did not return, they would run the hazard of being totally exterminated.

This Naſeep and his people had actually experienced, when they ſent to demand juſtice againſt Van der Weſthuyſen on his firſt uſurpation. Could I hope then, after this fatal trial, they would venture to go with a ſecond com-

plaint; or that the two families, emboldened by the ſucceſs of their iniquity, would deſiſt in conſequence of my remonſtrances?

Under theſe circumſtances, I could do nothing but endeavour to conſole the horde: that is, exhort it to take patience, and repeat all thoſe common-place topics of prudence and reſignation, of which he who hears them thinks as little as the perſon by whom they are uttered.

To inſert in my travels the principal particulars of this affair, I conceive to be my duty; and my reaſons for doing ſo will doubtleſs be reſpected. My ſecond journey will reach Holland, as my firſt has done. Like the firſt, it will probably be read by ſome of the directors of the company; and perhaps meaſures will be taken to remove abuſes with which they were before unacquainted, and which moſt aſſuredly they have no deſire to countenance.

When I arrived at Amſterdam, on my return to Europe, happening to mention to one of them that ſmall money was wanting at the Cape, and that the internal trade of the colony was injured by this want, the directory ordered, in conſequence, a coinage, as I have ſaid elſewhere, of different ſmall ſilver pieces,

to the amount of two or three hundred thouſand livres; and ſo ſpeedily was the buſineſs executed, that the money was actually ſent away before I even knew that it was in the mint. And I have no doubt, when informed of the ſpecies of injuſtice I have juſt unfolded, they will be eager to repair and prevent it by ſage and wholeſome laws, and will commend the diſintereſted zeal of a traveller, who, while he publiſhes good actions without flattery, ventures at the ſame time to denounce bad ones without malice.

Notwithſtanding the loſſes of the horde, it ſtill poſſeſſed a conſiderable number of cattle. Naſeep entreated me even to accept, as a preſent, two oxen, four ſheep, and a fat cow. The oxen I refuſed; but I received the cow and ſheep, intending them for our evening repaſt. My deſire was to make a feaſt, flattering myſelf that mirth would ſoften down aſperities, and diſpel the animoſity that prevailed among the horde.

I was not miſtaken. Scarcely were the animals ſlaughtered when the dances commenced. They continued the whole night, and the quarrels of the day were buried in

oblivion. The next morning, a general reconciliation took place, in which even Naſeep was included. It is true, he had himſelf made ſome advances: among the preſents I made him was a roll of tobacco, which, the moment he received it, he diſtributed in equal portions among his people; and this unexpected liberality had gained him every heart.

Before I departed, I purchaſed what ſheep I wanted; and then, to acquit myſelf of the promiſe I had made of ſpeaking to the two uſurping families, I repaired to Engelbrecht's.

He appeared to ſee me again with pleaſure, and received me with the utmoſt civility: but, before I returned his complaiſance, I thought it right to inform him of the motive of my viſit, and acquaint him how much I was intereſted in behalf of the ſavages. He exculpated himſelf, by obſerving to me, that it was not him they accuſed of having killed their oxen, but Van der Weſthuyſen and his family; and as to the domain he poſſeſſed, if it were uſurped, he was in this reſpect alſo equally blameleſs, ſince he had it of his brother-in-law, by whom it had been ceded to him.

After ſuch excuſes, I ſaw that no ſatisfaction

or reconciliation was to be expected. Of courſe I did not think it neceſſary to make any ſtay with him; and I continued my journey. But, when my waggon ſet off, he perceived what wretched objects were my two thill oxen, and he offered me my choice of two others out of all he had, if I would give him in exchange one of my horſes.

My oxen, it is true, were good for nothing, and had been on the point a hundred times of overturning my waggon and breaking it to pieces. Yet the bargain propoſed was greatly to my diſadvantage: for though I no longer wanted both my horſes, as I ſhould ſoon reach the Cape, either of them was of much more worth than any two oxen. They were very lean, indeed, owing to the great fatigue of the journey; but no other fault could be found with them, for they were in perfect health, ſound in their feet, and had their hoofs too in good condition.

This expreſſion, of the hoofs being in good condition, will ſurpriſe the greater part of my readers, and requires an explanation.

It muſt be known then, that horſes are never ſhod either at the Cape or in any part of the colony.

colony. Their hoofs are ſo hard, that, whatever road they travel, they are always bare. Thus, though the country is not without farriers, their only employment is to cure horſes that are ſick or hurt, or to fit them for carriages.

Is this property in the hoof, of being abſolutely indeſtructible, owing to the food of the animal? I think not. Horſes are fed at the Cape, as in certain countries of Europe, on barley, ſtraw, or green forage: the only difference is, they eat no oats; for oats do not thrive in Africa, and therefore are not cultivated.

Does it depend on the climate? Or is it common to the Arabian horſes, from which thoſe of the Cape are deſcended? I dare not anſwer either of theſe queſtions in the affirmative. But this at leaſt I can aſſert, that mine, after travelling fifteen months, over rocks and flints, in execrable roads, and after violent hunts, returned with their hoofs as ſound and whole as the day they quitted the Cape.

My want of thill oxen, however, made me conſent to the bargain; and with theſe I took the way to the reſidence of Van der Weſt-

huyſen; though I expected with this old man, governed as he was by his wife, no better ſucceſs than I had found with his brother-in-law. His houſe was at the diſtance only of two leagues and a half; but I had ſcarcely advanced four hundred paces, when, going down a deſcent, one of my new oxen, overpowered by the weight of the waggon, fell down.

I had no reaſon to be ſurpriſed at this accident: it had many times happened, and was what every perſon muſt expect who travels in countries where there are no roads. On theſe occaſions it is uſual for the drivers to ſtop the fore-wheel, to prevent the animal from being cruſhed by it: but here they had not time; accordingly it went over the ox, and broke his thigh.

This misfortune being without remedy, I ordered the animal to be unyoked, and, leaving him on the ſpot, had one of my old ones ſubſtituted in his place. The other, however, miſſing his comrade, and ſeeing a ſtranger at his ſide, refuſed to draw with him. All poſſible means were tried to overcome his repugnance, but to no purpoſe. After conſiderable trouble and much loſs of time, we were forced

to unyoke him alſo, and proceed as before with my two old oxen.

I had thus from my barter, one uſeleſs ox the more, and a horſe the leſs.

The Hottentot cattle-dealers who accompanied me were the only people who had reaſon to rejoice at the adventure. The forſaken ox was to them a very good windfall. Accordingly they remained behind to cut him up, and perhaps in their hearts they would not have been ſorry if I had oftener ſupplied their table in a ſimilar manner.

I was arrived within an hour's march of my journey's end when I perceived, in a valley, a Hottentot hut, ſtanding by itſelf, and a herd feeding near it. On approaching the hut, I found to my ſurpriſe a tall and handſome damſel. I had ſeen and have ſpoken of her before: it was the daughter of Van der Weſthuyſen; that daughter who, for ſeveral days together, had held out with the ſtouteſt of the drinkers, carouſing upon the brandy of Pinar as heroically as the beſt of them.

Indefatigable in the chace, ſhe could hunt down on horſeback the largeſt antelope. If the Boſhmen appeared, ſhe would take her gun,

gun, purſue them without fear, and fire at them wherever ſhe found them. If ſhe conceived herſelf aggrieved by any neighbouring horde, ſhe would treat it like the Boſhmen. Accordingly, ſhe was dreaded by all the ſavages around.

At preſent this undaunted heroine lived in the ſolitary hut in the valley, where ſhe kept the flocks and herds of her father, having no other furniture than a mat and her gun. I readily knew her, but was not ſo eaſily recognized in my turn, as my beard, ſince laſt we met, had acquired fourteen months growth.

After ſpending a few minutes in her hut, I left her, and proceeded to her father's, where I was received with every demonſtration of friendſhip. Seeing by my pale and languid countenance that I had been ill, they civilly invited me to ſpend ſome time with them. I accepted the invitation with the more pleaſure, as, ſince my illneſs, I had confined myſelf to a milk diet, and the udders of moſt of my cows being dried up, I had lately had but a ſcanty ſupply.

I now ſaw bread again for the firſt time. A year had elapſed ſince I taſted any, which was during my former reſidence with the ſame family.

family. What was now given me I dipped with delight in my beverage of milk, as fresh as it was pure; and this simple and frugal meal was more exquisite to my taste than the richest viands.

Klaas Baster was well received by his family, and even by his step-mother; and the reception afforded him the greater pleasure, as it gave him reason to hope, that the reconciliation I had effected for him would continue after my departure, and probably be lasting.

Advanced thus far on my return, every thing co-operated to efface the remembrance of my fatigues, and the obstacles that had so often thwarted my designs. The fields, formerly so barren and lifeless, were covered with verdure and enamelled with flowers. My eyes feasted with rapture on the fruitful and re-vivified land. Perfectly secure about my cattle, whatever road I might choose, I resolved to change my former one, and return to the Cape by a different way from that I had come.

Beside the pleasure of seeing and traversing a new country, I had also the hope of finding something to add to my collections.

I turned off, therefore, to the south-west; and

and after travelling fourteen leagues, which was the buſineſs of three days, I arrived at the *Groene-Rivier* (Green-River). But how much did I ſtill deceive myſelf by the dreams of my imagination!

The firſt object I noticed on my arrival was the dung of an elephant, yet warm. This indicated that ſome of theſe animals were near. I took Swanepoel with me, and, without loſing time, ſet off to trace them, while my camp was erecting. To ſee me depart attended only by a ſingle man, it ſeemed as if I were going to kill a hare or a rabbit. Formerly I ſhould not in this manner have ventured at ſuch ſport; but inſenſibly we become hardy, ſo that the greateſt dangers appear no more than common occurrences.

We had not proceeded three hundred paces before we perceived five elephants ſtanding in the midſt of the trees that ſkirted the river. Each of us ſingled out his object, each brought down his beaſt, and the other three fled. At the report my hunters haſtened to us; and when arrived, my old Swanepoel, hitherto conſidered by them as an honeſt fellow, fit only to take care of my chickens, tauntingly

pointed

pointed at the elephant he had killed, and aſked if they could mend the ſhot.

The animals were both males, and nearly of the ſame height and bulk, meaſuring about ten feet each [ten feet eight inches Engliſh]. This is the uſual ſize of elephants in Africa, where it is very rare to meet with any that reach to eleven or twelve feet. They were, however, not of the ſame age, and conſequently their tuſks were very unequal; thoſe of one weighing ſeventy or eighty pounds, while thoſe of the other did not exceed five-and-thirty or forty.

What convinced me ſtill more of the difference of their ages was, that the heavier tuſks were nearly ſolid throughout, while the others were hollow two-thirds of their length: the elder, too, had his grinding teeth much worn, while the grinding teeth of the other were in good preſervation and entire. The ivory of old elephants, being more compact and heavy, is more valuable and fetches a higher price: from its denſity it takes alſo a finer poliſh, appears whiter, and is leſs liable to grow yellow.

The Green-River was covered with aquatic fowls

fowls of all kinds, particularly pelicans, flamingoes, and wild geeſe. I alſo met with the night-heron, the creſted purple heron, the common heron, and the black ſtork, all exactly ſimilar to thoſe of Europe.

The dead elephants procured me ſeveral birds of prey. I conſtructed within ſhot of their carcaſes a little arbour, in which I concealed myſelf to lie in wait for ſuch birds as ſhould come to feed on them. From morning till night they alighted by hundreds, and I killed ſuch as appeared to me to deſerve the preference.

During my reſidence at Green-River, I changed my encampment ſeveral times, and thus travelled over a ſpace of eight or ten leagues on its banks. At length I quitted them, and gained thoſe of the *Swarte-Doorn* (Black-Thorn), at the very place where I met Pinar for the firſt time. I ſpent the night there, and the next day bent my courſe towards the mountains to the ſouth. The road was terrible for my waggons. After a laborious march of ſix hours, we arrived at the foot of a chain of arid mountains, the bare and ruſty rocks of which, picturesquely heaped

heaped on one another, exhibited a ſingular and fantaſtic ſpectacle; but none could be better calculated for a retreat to the Boſhmen. On ſeeing them, I whiſpered to myſelf that I ought to be on my guard: yet, notwithſtanding my miſtruſt, I was taken unawares.

My people were buſy in pitching my camp. I in the mean time having perceived ſome wood-peckers of a ſcarce ſpecies, which I have named the rock wood-pecker, followed them, and found myſelf inſenſibly on one of the cliffs, from which I overlooked my camp.

Suddenly I heard three diſcharges of my large carbine as ſignals of alarm. Looking about me, I ſaw, on the one hand, my people running in diſorder, and, on the other, a party of Boſhmen, who had ſeized my oxen, and were driving them into a defile, where they would ſoon be out of ſight.

I deſcended the mountains with precipitancy, and, when I arrived at its foot, I found Klaas galloping to inform me of my misfortune. He gave me his horſe. I mounted it, and rode full ſpeed toward the defile; but I had ſcarcely advanced fifty paces, when my horſe ſtumbled in a porcupine's hole, and threw

threw me on my ſide. My fall was ſo ſevere, that, when I roſe, I could not uſe my left arm, and I imagined my ſhoulder to be diſlocated. Klaas came to me: I ordered him to remount the horſe, while I returned to the camp on foot, unable to take any part in this adventure, and leaving my people to terminate it in the beſt way they could. It was night before they returned, when I learned, with ſorrow, that two of the Boſhmen had been killed. All my oxen, however, were brought back except three; and theſe were not miſſed till we were about to depart the next day.

That the robbers might not make another attempt, I departed at day-break; and by a march of ſix or ſeven hours, in the ſame direction as the day before, I arrived at a place where I was met by ſome Hottentots of the horde of Klaas Baſter, who knew me. They informed us, that his horde had quitted the mountains of Namero, and had ſettled five leagues from the ſpot where I was.

Baſter being ſtill with me, I conceived myſelf bound in gratitude, after the important ſervices I had received at his hands, to reſtore him, in perſon, to the arms of his wife,

his

his children, and his friends. I repaired, therefore, to the horde. His return occaſioned inexpreſſible joy; which was ſo much the greater, as they ſuppoſed us to be dead, and had deſpaired of ever ſeeing us more. It was in conſequence of this perſuaſion, that they had thought proper to remove and ſettle in another place.

The people of the horde told me another piece of news, which gave me ſtill greater pleaſure than the former: it was, that the worthy Schoenmaker had alſo quitted the mountains, and eſtabliſhed his camp in the neighbourhood. Eager to ſee this honeſt being, for whom I had ſo great an eſteem, and to whom I owed ſo many obligations, I inſtantly paid him a viſit, and embraced him with the tendereſt affection.

The ſervices which he had exerted himſelf to render me were alive in my memory and my heart, and I wanted no new motive to intereſt me in his behalf. But I confeſs I could not behold him ſurrounded with his wives and children, like a good father and kind huſband, without feeling myſelf ſtill more inclined to ſerve him to the utmoſt of my power.

I acquainted him with the deſign I had

formed of ſoliciting his pardon, and of obtaining from the Government leave for him to return to the colony. He thanked me with emotion for the kindneſs of my intentions: but, though he had great confidence in the friendſhip with which Colonel Gordon honoured him, and ſtill greater in the zeal I diſplayed for his welfare, he had little hope of my ſucceſs; no inſtance, he ſaid, of ſuch pardon having ever been known.

I encouraged him as much as I could, by aſſuring him of the warmth with which I would ſolicit the favour. Indeed, that with which he inſpired me at the moment was ſo great, that, not doubting of ſucceſs, I proteſted he ſhould ſoon hear from me, and requeſted him to be in readineſs to ſet off at the earlieſt notice.

He liſtened to my conſolatory promiſes with tears. But the fear of their failure was predominant; and his imagination, ſo long tortured with continual anxiety, depicted to him a thouſand chimeras, which he dared not combat himſelf, and which I had great difficulty to deſtroy.

To diſſipate theſe gloomy ideas, and revive his ſpirits, I turned his mind to another object. I ſpoke to him of his little hermitage near the Orange, related my adventure with the

the travellers I had met, and told him how I had taken upon myſelf to diſpoſe of the place, and beſtow it on an unfortunate family; not doubting, from the teſtimonies he had given me of his friendſhip, but he would confirm a gift made without his conſent.—As I had ſuppoſed, he approved it without the ſmalleſt heſitation.

"When I arrived in theſe deſerts," ſaid he, "I was without ſhelter, and without reſource, "like thoſe on whom you have beſtowed your "protection. My own misfortunes have ren- "dered me ſenſible to thoſe of others. I congra- "tulate myſelf on the good uſe you have made "of my little eſtate. May it prove the aſylum "you wiſh, and long preſerve the remem- "brance of its founder, and of him who has "thus conſecrated it by an act of benevolence!"

Klaas Baſter had accompanied me to Schoenmaker's. Seeing me ready to reſume my journey towards the Cape, he requeſted my permiſſion to return to his family; and to this I the more willingly conſented, as thenceforward he could be of no ſervice to me. Before we parted, I made him a preſent of ſome powder and ſhot, ſome beads for his wife and children, and two of my dogs, of which he had become particularly fond during our journey.

As there was no route more commodious for my waggons than that of the Elephants-River, I ſent them and the greater part of my caravan before me, with directions to take the ſame road as we had come, and to wait for me on its banks. Purpoſing to traverſe the country, and reach the river by a different way, I took with me ſix of my Hottentots and a few dogs, and entered among the mountains.

We carried nothing with us but powder and ſhot, reſolving to ſleep in the open air, and to live on the fruits of the chace.

The firſt night, we took up our abode on the ridge of the mountains where had formerly been ſituated one of the kraals of Klaas Baſter. We here ſuffered extremely from the cold. Long accuſtomed as we had been to the heat of the plain, the cool temperature of theſe heights had the greater effect upon us; and the worſt of our ſituation was, we could procure no wood to make a fire. Fortunately, however, cattle having a long time been kept in the ſpot, we found an abundance of their dried dung; and the gentle warmth afforded by this ſort of fuel mitigated the rigour of the cold.

Another misfortune was, that, carrying no

proviſion, we had nothing to eat; and game in theſe mountains was extremely ſcarce. In three days we had been able to kill only a ſingle kainſi antelope, which was a poor ſupply for ſeven perſons. At length our neceſſity was ſo great, that, on the afternoon of the third day, being totally deſtitute of food, it was reſolved that each of us ſhould take his own courſe, and hunt for himſelf.

Klaas, from his attachment to me, would not leave me. We killed three wood-peckers and ſix larks. My hunters might have done ſtill better, by ſhooting at damans; but, greedy of larger game, they neglected theſe to ſeek for other antelopes. They all returned empty handed, and were of courſe, from their preceding faſt and the violent exerciſe they had taken, doubly hungry.

I much regretted that I could not ſhare with them the produce of my chace. But, as it was ſcarcely ſufficient for Klaas and myſelf, how could it have been ſhared with five others?

On this occaſion I was witneſs to the effects which the terrible want called hunger is capable of producing. I have heard a cele-

brated naturaliſt, Romé de Liſle, whoſe recent loſs we cannot but lament, ſay that, during the ſiege of Pondicherry in 1761, he had been reduced to ſuch extremity, that he deemed it a happineſs to purchaſe, for their weight in gold, an old pair of leather breeches, which, out of humanity, he ſhared with three officers, his friends. Nothing was left for my Hottentots but the ſkin of our antelope. Accordingly, having no other food, they ſeized upon this; and, without any preparation, broiled it as it was with the hair on, and devoured the whole of it.

The burning of the hair diffuſed a noiſome ſmell round the fire, which turned me ſick. My hungry people themſelves appeared diſguſted at it: yet I ſaw them tear the nauſeous leather to pieces with their hands and teeth. In different circumſtances, the diſtorted features with which their repugnance accompanied theſe efforts would probably have excited my laughter; in the preſent, they pierced my heart, and gave me an idea of the fearful extremities to which men may be driven by famine.

Our ſituation made me regret that I had quitted

quitted my caravan: for, if obliged to fire at ſmall birds for food, as we had hitherto done, we ſhould ſoon exhauſt our ammunition, and thereby be reduced to the utmoſt perplexity. Happily, however, getting farther to the eaſt, we perceived, in the plain on the other ſide of the mountains, ſeveral plantations belonging to the coloniſts. This ſight gladdened my ſkin-eaters. We deſcended the mountains, and repaired to the higheſt plantation, where we did not arrive till it was duſk. As ſoon as we were perceived, we were taken for Boſhmen or thieves coming to attack and pillage the houſe; the dogs were turned looſe upon us; and it was well we were not welcomed with a few ſhot. Fortunately they were ſtopped and repulſed by my pack; and the maſter himſelf, running out at the noiſe, and perceiving me to be an European, called back his people and his dogs, and came to meet me. He had heard of my expedition; and, when I told him my name, he made an apology, and preſſed me to enter his habitation. I mentioned our diſtreſs, and requeſted ſome food for my people. He generouſly complied, and gave us, indeed, ſo friendly a

reception, that I ſpent the night under his roof.

At my departure I was deſirous of recompenſing his kindneſs: but, not contented with refuſing every token of acknowledgement, he would give my people a loaf and a quarter of mutton, to ſerve them on their journey; and as for myſelf, obſerving that I ate ſcarcely any thing but butter, he ordered ſome freſh to be made, and inſiſted on my accepting a pot of it.

I returned to the mountains, becauſe, being able from their ſummits to diſcover the Elephants-River, at which my caravan ought by this time to have arrived, I ſhould the better know how to direct my courſe. Our march continued ſtill three days longer, without affording any thing to intereſt me, but a night ſpent near a beautiful ſpring that abounded with the ſhrub on which grows the fruit called in that country *welf's-gift* (wolf's poiſon).

This name is derived from the property poſſeſſed by the fruit, when roaſted, of poiſoning any carnivorous animals that may eat of it. It is prepared like coffee, ground in the ſame manner, and the powder is then

ſtrewed

ſtrewed over pieces of fleſh, which are laid for theſe animals in the night. The bait is intended chiefly for the jackal and hyena. As ſoon as it is ſwallowed, the animal ſwells prodigiouſly, and dies more or leſs ſpeedily according to the quantity he has taken. At length we perceived ſome large trees, which, by their winding poſition, appeared to ſkirt ſome river. Not doubting but it was the Elephants-River, we deſcended the mountains to reach its banks. The river, indeed, it was; but we had roamed ſo much farther than we were aware, that, returning upon our ſteps, or rather proceeding down the ſtream, it was not till after two encampments that we reached the place of rendezvous, the houſe of Van Zeyl; where, when we arrived, all my people and waggons I found had been waiting for me three days.

My caravan was conſiderably diminiſhed. The Hottentot cattle-dealers, after having paſſed the river, had repaired to their reſpective hordes, leaving only two of their party in the camp, to wait for me, and receive in money or in kind the value of the tobacco they had ſold me at the Orange.

I wiſhed

I wiſhed to return it them in kind, to ſave them the trouble of going to the colony to purchaſe more; but, to do this, I muſt buy it myſelf. Van Zeyl had none; but at another planter's near, he informed me I might procure ſome. Accordingly I went thither on horſeback, and purchaſed the quantity I wanted, at the exorbitant price of a Dutch ſcalin (ſixpence) a pound. Thus having diſcharged my debt to my travelling companions, I repaired to *Heere-logement*, that grotto ſo naturally carpeted by the foliage of a large tree, and which I have already deſcribed.

Every thing was green in this diſtrict, as in thoſe I had lately traverſed, and conſequently very different from what it was at my former viſit. But the neighbouring planters, by way of huſbanding the paſture on their own eſtates, had driven their herds hither; and theſe herds were ſo numerous, that the herbage was almoſt all eaten up. The keepers of the cattle even aſſured me, that, if I purſued the ordinary route to the Cape, I ſhould every where experience the ſame inconvenience; and they adviſed me to travel more to the ſouth-weſt, through *Verloore-Valey* (loſt-lake), where, the

 paſtu-

paſturage having ſuffered leſs in this way, I ſhould neceſſarily find a better ſupply.

Impatient as I was to reach the Cape, this circuit, which would coſt me ſeveral days march, was extremely againſt my will: but neceſſity compelled me to ſubmit to it. In two days I arrived in *Verloore-Valey*, which I found to be an extenſive lake, ſeparated from the ſea by a narrow border of ſandy downs.

The lake and its banks being covered with birds of every kind, I flattered myſelf I ſhould find ſome for my collection that would recompenſe me for the length of the road. In fact, I ſaw there not only all the birds that I had met with on Green-River, but alſo the coot of Europe, different ſpecies of grebes, particularly that called by naturaliſts the horned grebe, and a particular ſpecies of penguin.

This bird has a creſt of long narrow feathers covering its eyes and the ſides of its head, and this creſt it can erect and lower at will. The ſame ſpecies is found about the ſtraits of Magellan, where it was ſeen by the celebrated Bougainville, who gave it the name of hopping penguin. Buffon gives a ſhort deſcription of it under the ſame name, and afterwards figures

figures it in his *Planches Enluminées*, under that of the creſted penguin of Siberia.

In the ſame lake I found a great number of penguins of another ſpecies, the ſame as I ſpoke of having ſeen in Saldanha bay. Theſe penguins have on their bodies an abundance of fat; and I have no doubt but the neighbouring planters might make of this fat a lucrative article of trade, if they would employ themſelves in taking theſe birds. The profit would be the more certain, as the birds in queſtion are extremely plenty on the weſtern coaſt, and ſo tame that they will ſuffer themſelves to be knocked on the head without ſtirring, and even to be taken by the hand. This ſhows that, with a little care and addreſs, means might be found of obtaining them at ſo ſmall an expence, that powder and ſhot might be ſpared, and the buſineſs be almoſt entirely clear gain.

My viſit to *Verloore-Valey* procured me great number of aquatic birds of different ſpecies, and among them the purple gallinule, which is very abundant there, and excellent food. In ſhort, the lake ſwarms with all the water-fowls that may be found diſperſed here and there over the reſt of this part of the world,

world. It is the only place for an ornithologiſt to fix his reſidence, who would wiſh in a ſhort time to procure a complete collection of the web-footed and ſhore birds of Africa. I there obtained alſo a beautiful ſpecies of ſmall creſted falcon, that feeds only on crabs and fiſh, which it catches in the ſame way as the oſprey, the bald-buzzard and the kite. I ſpent eleven days on the borders of this lake, and collected a hundred and thirty-two ſpecimens of birds, large and ſmall. At length my hunters brought me more birds every day than I could tell how to diſpoſe of, and I had not the pleaſure of killing a ſingle one myſelf, ſo fully was I employed in preparing them.

Finding myſelf ſo near St. Helen's Bay, I reſolved to viſit it. In conſequence, I ordered my people to proceed with my waggons to Swart-Land, and wait for me at the houſe of my friend Slaber. Swanepoel was entruſted with the care of conducting them thither, and, having done this, was to proceed on without delay to the Cape, to give my friends notice of my return, and inquire whether any letter had arrived for me during my fifteen months abſence. The interval I was to ſpend

at

at St. Helen's: I had never yet been there; and I ſhould not have forgiven myſelf, if, now that I was ſo near, I neglected to ſee it.

For this excurſion I took with me only the ſame hunters as had attended me in my laſt. When I arrived at the bay, I traverſed all its windings from one point to the other. Kolben, who was no better geographer than he was a naturaliſt, and who had ſeen no more of St. Helen's Bay than he had of the colony, ſays that *Berg-Rivier* diſembogues itſelf to the north of the bay; and it is thus he lays it down in his map. Kolben is miſtaken in this point, as he is in a thouſand others. The mouth of the Berg is in the ſouthern part of St. Helen's. The Bay itſelf too is improperly placed in all our ſea charts, its latitude being wrong by more than fifteen minutes.

This river, which I aſcended for a conſiderable way, is obſtructed by foreſts of reeds, into which the hippopotamuſes retire and conceal themſelves. Government, fearing that theſe amphibious animals, the ſpecies of which it wiſhes to preſerve, might be totally deſtroyed, has prohibited hunting them, under penalty of a fine. This regulation would ſhare

the

the fate of many others, and in all probability be no better obſerved, if local difficulties did not enſure its execution. But the impoſſibility of penetrating theſe foreſts of reeds diſcourages the hunters, and ſecures the breed of hippopotamuſes more effectually than laws, which in general are ſeldom regarded, and the rigour of which, at the expence of twenty or thirty rixdollars, may with certainty be averted.

After having viſited the Bay of St. Helen's, I proceeded along the ſea ſhore to that of Saldanha. Both abounded alike with ſpermaceti whales. In the ſingle cove called *Hoctjes-Bay*, I counted two-and-thirty playing together. It is perfectly aſtoniſhing that the governors of the Cape have never thought of this branch of commerce, which unqueſtionably would be very lucrative; but it would be neceſſary to leave it entirely to the coloniſts, merely reſerving certain duties on the fiſhery for the company. It is to be hoped, that the Dutch government will ſome day perceive the neceſſity of attending ſeriouſly to the affairs of this intereſting ſettlement. They have only to leave the inhabitants

habitants at liberty to purſue their own ſchemes without fettering their induſtry, and this part of Africa would become the moſt flouriſhing on the face of the globe.

Upon quitting Saldanha, I proceeded towards the habitation of my venerable friend Slaber. His worthy, his amiable family, appriſed of my return from my expedition by the people with my waggons, and informed of my arrival by one of my hunters whom I ſent on before, came to meet me. I was ſurpriſed not to ſee my good friend himſelf with his children. They informed me, that ſince my departure he had been ſeized with a ſevere dyſentery, and was at the point of death. He had been often anxious about me during my abſence, and had made reſpecting me every poſſible enquiry. He had wiſhed to embrace me once more before he died; and when he ſaw Swanepoel and Klaas return without me, he was alarmed. But they had removed his fears by accounting for my delay; and he expected me with impatience.

They added, that he was ſo extremely emaciated and ſo much altered, that I ſhould ſcarcely know him; and, as they were apprehenſive his

his ſituation would make upon me at firſt ſight ſo ſtrong an impreſſion that I ſhould be unable to conceal my feelings, they beſought me to reſtrain my ſurpriſe, and not alarm him to no purpoſe.

I entered his chamber, affecting a degree of joy which was certainly far from my heart. I even profeſſed to conſider his diſeaſe as a ſlight malady; and, after juſt mentioning the ſubject without waiting for his reply, I turned the converſation to the fine bull I had procured for him on my journey, and which my people had no doubt already preſented to him.

His ſufferings, however, had ſo much weaned him from earth and all its concerns, that he appeared to pay little attention to my preſent, and ſpoke only of his approaching diſſolution. At the Cape the dyſentery is to people of all ages and conſtitutions a dangerous diſeaſe; but to thoſe advanced in life it is always fatal; and I perceived too clearly that my beſt friend was dying.

Swanepoel, on his return from the Cape, brought me news of my friends, and letters from Europe. Among others was one from my reſpected friend Boers, which informed me

of his arrival in Holland, after an agreeable paſſage. Not ſatisfied with the ſervices he had rendered me during his abode at the Cape, he informed me, that he had commended me anew to all his friends, particularly to the new fiſcal Serrurier, whoſe zeal and friendſhip towards me while I remained in Africa never abated for an inſtant. All my acquaintances invited me to haſten to the town; and Colonel Gordon and his lady wrote to me to that purpoſe, in the moſt friendly manner, inſiſting that I ſhould take up my abode at their houſe.

Among my letters were ſeveral alſo from my family and friends in France; and one in particular from Amſterdam, which overturned all my projects, all the arrangements that I had already actually formed in my head for a third journey into the deſerts. It was from Temminck, who informed me, that one of the company's ſhips, engaged in the ſlave trade, would ſoon ſail from Holland for the iſland of Madagaſcar. This veſſel was to touch at the Cape to victual and water, ſo that I might eaſily introduce myſelf to the Captain, and embark with him for the place of his deſtination.

Knowing, however, my inclination for travelling, and ſuppoſing that I ſhould gladly avail myſelf of ſuch an opportunity to viſit that celebrated iſland the largeſt in the known world; my friend, had made every arrangement with the Captain; and of theſe arrangements he gave me notice in his letter.

I was highly gratified by this obliging readineſs to ſerve me, which was as congenial to my inclination as it was prudently managed. It is true, this new ſcheme did not accord with my other: but then, beſides that it afforded me an opportunity of viſiting a land I had never ſeen—beſides that I ſhould have ſufficient time completely to traverſe it, as the ſhip muſt neceſſarily make ſome ſtay at the iſland to accompliſh the purpoſe of her voyage, I might reſume my former plan on my return to the Cape. For the preſent, therefore, I gave up my deſign of viſiting again the interior part of Africa, and employed myſelf in preparing to ſail for Madagaſcar: a preparation which would eaſily be effected, as my friend himſelf had ſmoothed every difficulty.

In this new arrangement I wanted neither waggons nor horſes, nor teams of oxen, nor

indeed any of that apparatus and thoſe attendants which had hitherto been neceſſary. My oxen, become uſeleſs to me, were the firſt things I ſought to diſpoſe of. Being extremely lean, and little calculated for the yoke in their preſent condition, I offered them to the company's butcher, who paid me at the rate of ſeven rix-dollars per head, or about thirty livres French money.

Two of my cows I gave to Klaas's wife, who had accompanied me on my journey, and had performed for me the office of a laundreſs, and ſometimes of a cook; and two others to Swanepoel. Finally, I offered my goats to the daughters of Slaber: but they would only accept them conditionally, as depoſits to be returned if, in conſequence of taking a new journey, I ſhould hereafter have occaſion for them.

In this herd of goats were a he and ſhe purchaſed by me in the Nimiqua country for my friend Liewenberg, of the canton of the Four-and-Twenty Rivers, and at his requeſt. I had the pleaſure of delivering them to him myſelf. I had not forgotten the bottles of lemon-juice, which this worthy planter had given me in

my

my journey, the friendſhip he had ſo readily ſhewn me, and the two beautiful birds which had been procured me by his ſons.

Though my preſent was trifling in itſelf, it was the more gratifying to him, as it was preciſely what he had deſired of me, and what in reality he moſt wiſhed for. I afterwards divided amongſt my honeſt Hottentots every thing for which I had no farther occaſion.

Thus having gotten rid of all that was uſeleſs to me, I reckoned with my attendants, and appointed them to meet me at the Cape to be paid. Though they were all eager to return to their hordes to ſee their families, they did not quit me without expreſſing regret: nor was I on my part without emotion, though there were few of them againſt whom I had not ſome cauſe of complaint.

My new ſcheme called me to the Cape; and my attentions, however affectionate and ſincere, could be of no uſe to a ſick man, whoſe deplorable ſtate left no hopes of his recovery. I embraced, therefore, for the laſt time this beſt of men, to whom I was under the greateſt obligations, and whom I tenderly loved. He bade me alſo a laſt farewell; and ſome time after I

learned, that his reſpectable family had to lament his death.

At length, after an abſence of ſixteen months ſpent in the deſerts of Africa, I arrived at the Cape, where Gordon and his lady were eagerly expecting me. I was welcomed as a friend, a brother, a ſon, or whatever is moſt dear; and the kindneſs of theſe beneficent hoſts never ſlackened for a moment. The memory of my gratitude will continue as long as my travels ſhall continue to be read; nor can I permit myſelf to be withheld from the declaration of it by the apprehenſion, that that declaration may be conſtrued in a way offenſive to the ſelf-love of others.

My firſt care, as ſoon as I was at liberty, was to enquire whether there were any veſſel in the harbour bound for Europe. I found one ready to ſail, by which I wrote to Temminck, thanking him for what he had done for me, and informing him, that I had reſolved to accept his generous offer, and waited only for the arrival of the ſlave-ſhip which was to tranſport me to Madagaſcar. I ſent advice to the ſame purpoſe to my family, and thought of nothing but my departure.

I had

I had not forgotten poor Schoenmaker. The very day after my arrival, I had endeavoured to intereſt Gordon in the fate of this unhappy deſerter. The Colonel had conſiderable regard for him, and aſſured me of his inclination to ſerve him. In conſequence I ſent an expreſs to the outlaw, telling him to repair immediately to the town. He came. We conducted him to the houſe of the Governor, and ſolicited his pardon; which was inſtantly granted. He left me to return to his deſerts to ſettle his affairs, and then came to reſide in the colony, where he ſoon gained the friendſhip of his neighbours, and married a daughter of one of them: a circumſtance that ſeldom occurs in a country where ſoldiers and ſailors are in general held in little eſtimation by the planters.

While I remained at the Cape, the ſlaveſhip came into the road. I received by it other letters from Temminck, who again repeated all he had ſaid before reſpecting my voyage to Madagaſcar, preſſing me to undertake it, and having no doubt but the captain of the veſſel, who was under the greateſt obligations to him, would do every thing in his power for my

accommodation. But I very ſoon perceived that my friend had been miſtaken with regard to this captain, whoſe conduct plainly ſhowed me how little he wiſhed that I ſhould accompany him. Unwilling to expoſe myſelf to the certain inconvenience of making ſuch a voyage with a man who viſibly regarded me with jealouſy, fearing no doubt that I ſhould prove an obſtacle to his commercial projects, I gave up the idea for the moment; and, other croſs circumſtances continuing to procraſtinate the ſcheme, I abandoned it entirely. All my thoughts were now centred in Europe, and I became wholly diſguſted with travelling, till the time when, renouncing the ſociety of my ſpecies, deceived by them, outraged in the pureſt ſentiments of my heart, I was led once more to ſigh for a deſert, and was no longer able but in imagination to gratify my deſire.

At laſt an opportunity of departing arrived. The ſhips of the Dutch Eaſt-India company were returning home. I ſolicited a paſſage, which was granted me. There were five veſſels bound for Europe in the road, and the queſtion was, in which I could embark with my effects. One of theſe veſſels had brought from

from China an old ſupercargo of the company with his wife and children. I had now and then fallen in with theſe people in different companies at the Cape, and I rejoiced at the thought of having them to myſelf, and that too for a conſiderable time: for it is pleaſing to enliven the tedioufneſs of a long voyage by the charm of agreeable company, and to be able occaſionally to contemplate a handſome face, when the ſea, the ſky, or ſailors in their dirty dreſſes, are the objects, and the only objects, conſtantly before the eye. Such was to have been my lot: at leaſt ſuch I hoped it would have been. But probably the huſband thought me too eager for a paſſenger; and accordingly, without a direct denial, he aſſured me I ſhould be ſo badly accommodated; and he ſo poſitively refuſed to take my boxes on board with me, that I was obliged to give up the deſign. Being leſs a courtier than attached to my riches, I could by no means conſent to be ſeparated from them. They were therefore ſent aboard another veſſel, and the ſupercargo was freed from my importunities. By his refuſal he gave me my life, while, poor man! he little thought of loſing his own.

I em-

I embarked in the Ganges, commanded by Captain *Paardekooper*. We ſailed from Falſe-Bay the 14th of July, 1784, accompanied by four other of the company's ſhips. We had ſcarcely cleared the bay, when contrary winds drove us to the ſouthward, where a horrible tempeſt aſſailed us, and we were driven by a violent gale to the latitude of 37° ſouth. I felt by experience how much reaſon the Portugueſe had to call the ſouthernmoſt part of Africa the Cape of Tempeſts. On this fearful occaſion we loſt two men, whom the waves waſhed off the deck. Every effort was made to ſave them, but in vain: they were twenty times overwhelmed by mountains of water, and at laſt periſhed. Our veſſel, which was old, greatly ſuffered: the water penetrated in all parts; and notwithſtanding every thing that could afterwards be done to remedy the evil, ſhe remained leaky during the whole voyage.

We were eleven days in this diſtreſſing ſituation; which, with the image of death every moment before our eyes, were a long and tedious period. On one of thoſe nights of horror, ſeveral guns were fired as ſignals of diſtreſs by one of the veſſels; and, to our grief,

the

the next day the *Middelbourg*, the veſſel into which I had been refuſed admiſſion, was no longer to be ſeen. Certain that ſhe had ſunk, I addreſſed a ſhort prayer to heaven for the ſupercargo's young wife; apprehenſive every moment that I ſhould myſelf be buried in the ſame grave. However, we had the happineſs at laſt to double the Cape, ſo much dreaded by ſailors. On the 10th of Auguſt we paſſed in ſight of St. Helena, and on the 25th croſſed the line in the longitude of 358°.

During the whole voyage, I never caſt my eyes backward without ſeeing in imagination the unfortunate Middelbourg. What a dreadful moment, ſaid I to myſelf, muſt it have been when the whole of that family were ſwallowed up by the waves! I fancied I heard the laſt ſhrieks of the unfortunate mother mingled with the dying ſcreams of her poor children. Alas! that hour had not yet arrived, but awaited them when in ſight of the port for which they were bound.

The four veſſels ſailed in company, without loſing ſight of each other; and we even viſited one another, when the weather was calm, and we could hoiſt out our boats.

When

When this kind of intercourſe was rendered impracticable by high winds and a too ſtormy ſea, we had recourſe to another, that of mutually writing letters, of which the gulls and terns were the carriers.

Theſe birds, beaten by the winds and tired with their flight, would pitch upon our yards to reſt themſelves, where the ſailors eaſily caught them. Having faſtened our little epiſtles to their legs, we then let them fly, and, making a noiſe to prevent their alighting again on our veſſel, obliged them to wing their courſe to the next. There they were caught again by the crew, and ſent back to us in the ſame manner with anſwers to our letters. This curious ſtratagem has ſomething kind and affectionate in it, which tranſports me to other regions; and it is one of the circumſtances of my travels which I always recollect with additional pleaſure.

In the latitude of 10° 15′ north, and longitude 355°, we met with a calm that delayed us ſeveral days, and in the interval I witneſſed a phenomenon, which, though known to the crew, was to me perfectly new.

An enormous flat fiſh, of the ray genus, came

came and ſwam round our veſſel. It differed from the common ray, however, in the ſhape of its head, which, inſtead of being pointed, formed a creſcent, and from the extremities of the ſemicircle iſſued two arms as it were, which the ſailors called horns. They were two feet wide at the baſe, and only five inches at the extremity. This monſter they told me was called the ſea-devil.

A few hours after, we ſaw two others with this, one of which was ſo extremely large, that it was computed by the crew to be fifty or ſixty feet wide. Each ſwam ſeparately, and was ſurrounded by thoſe ſmall fiſh which uſually precede the ſhark, and which are therefore called by ſeamen pilot-fiſh. Laſtly, all three carried on each of their horns a white fiſh, about the ſize of a man's arm and half a yard long, which appeared to be ſtationed there on duty.

You would have ſaid they were two ſentinels placed to keep watch for the ſafety of the animal, to inform him of any approaching danger, and to guide his movements. If he approached too near the veſſel, they quitted their poſts, and, ſwimming briſkly before, led him

him away. If he roſe too high above the water, they paſſed backward and forward over his back, till he had deſcended deeper. If, on the contrary, he ſwam too low, they diſappeared, and we ſaw no more of them, becauſe, no doubt, they were paſſing underneath, as in the preceding inſtance they had paſſed above him. Accordingly we found him re-aſcend towards the ſurface, and then the two ſentinels reaſſumed their poſts, each on his horn.

During the three days that the calm continued, and we remained motionleſs for want of wind, theſe manœuvres were many times repeated before our eyes as to each of the three monſters.

I was deſirous of catching one of them, in order to examine it at leiſure. But, when I propoſed it to the crew, they treated it as impoſſible. However, on my promiſing a dozen bottles of wine to any one who ſhould accompliſh it, their ardour was roufed; and the attempt, which was before deemed impracticable, was now only difficult.

They all ran to their harpoons, and poſted themſelves here and there by the ſhip's ſide in readineſs

readineſs to ſtrike. A ſailor ſtanding near the bowſprit, more fortunate than the reſt, ſtruck one of the three fiſh on the back: then letting out his line, that he might have room to beat about and tire himſelf, he at laſt towed him gradually to the ſurface of the water. The animal lay perfectly motionleſs; and we made no doubt of eaſily drawing him upon deck. One harpoon, however, being inſufficient to ſupport him, particularly as it had penetrated but a little way, twelve or fifteen more were ſtruck into him at once, ſo as to fix him completely: ſeveral halſers were paſſed round his body, and he was thus hoiſted on board.

This was the leaſt of the three, being only eight-and-twenty feet in its extreme breadth, and one-and-twenty in length from the extremity of the horns to that of the tail. The tail, which was thick in proportion to the body, was twenty-two inches long.

The mouth, placed exactly like that of the ray, was wide enough to ſwallow a man with eaſe. The ſkin was white under the belly, and brown on the back, like that of the ray.

We reckoned the animal to weigh not leſs, certainly, than a ton.

About

About twenty ſmall ſucking fiſh were faſtened to different parts of his body ſo firmly, that they did not drop off when he was hoiſted on board, but were taken with him.

Some naturaliſts have ſaid, that the head of the ſucking fiſh is viſcous on the lower part, and furniſhed with rough points ſimilar to the teeth of a file; and, according to them, it is by means of theſe two qualities, its roughneſs and viſcoſity, that it is enabled to adhere to other fiſh.

"Figure to yourſelf," ſays one of them, "a "row of nineteen ſharp-edged and dentated "laminæ, placed croſſwiſe, and iſſuing immediately from the rim of the lower jaw, and "you will have a juſt idea of the part with "which the remora makes itſelf faſt."

This deſcription is exact as far as relates to the figure and number of the dentated laminæ; but it places them on the lower part of the head, whereas they are, in reality, on the upper. Accordingly, when the remora fixes itſelf, it is obliged to turn upon its back, with its belly upward.

I am ignorant whether the two white fiſh that poſted themſelves on the arms of the ſea-

devil,

devil, and appeared to ſerve him as pilots, were alſo of the remora kind. But this at leaſt I can aſſert, that they appeared to ſtick as firmly to the extremities of the arms I have mentioned, notwithſtanding the arms were in continual motion. I muſt obſerve, however, that, if theſe white fiſh had a flat ſurface like that by which the remora adheres to other fiſh, it muſt have been on the lower part of the body, and not on the upper, ſince the animal continued in its natural poſition, and had no occaſion to turn over to fix itſelf at its poſt.

It would have been highly gratifying to me, if theſe fiſh had remained at their ſtations, and allowed themſelves to be taken with the ſea-devil, as I ſhould then have had an opportunity of examining them: but the moment the firſt harpoon was thrown, they let go their hold and diſappeared.

I hoped, however, that we might perchance catch one of thoſe that ſerved as ſentinels to the other two monſters, which, by all the noiſe we had made, had not been driven away. Different baits were tried for them, but to no purpoſe: when the hook was thrown into the water, they came and examined it, and immediately returned to their poſts.

I do not at preſent recollect that any naturaliſt has ſpoken of theſe white remoras. Yet other travellers beſide me have ſeen them. I ſhall cite on this head Dubadier, known in natural hiſtory for his rare and ample collection of the cruſtaceæ of the Caribbee iſlands. In his laſt voyage, this naturaliſt ſaw, in lat. 45° north, long. 333°, a ſimilar ray, which he ſuppoſed to be about twenty-five or thirty feet in breadth, accompanied by its two white pilots. He made a drawing of it, as I did of the rays which I ſaw; and, on comparing theſe drawings, the fiſh evidently appear to be of the ſame ſpecies.

The remainder of our paſſage offered nothing remarkable, but the contrary winds with which we were continually buffeted: and indeed in lat. 33° we were again attacked by a violent ſtorm. Fearing our voyage would be long and tedious, all the crew were put to ſhort allowance of water. On the fourth of October we paſſed the deſert iſlands of Flores and Corvo, and ſailed within muſket ſhot of their ſhores.

On the ninth of the ſame month one of the crew fell overboard. The waves ran ſo high it was impoſſible to ſave him. He was

inſtantly carried to a conſiderable diſtance. We ſaw him ſtretch out his arms to us; but the wind hurried us on with ſuch violence, that we could only throw ſome empty barrels and a few hencoops into the ſea. This even could not be done with ſufficient ſpeed; and, had any of theſe frail ſupports reached him, it would only have prolonged his ſuffering, and given him death twenty times over.

The twenty-third of October we fell in with two ſmall French veſſels returning from the cod-fiſhery. We purchaſed of them a ſufficiency for our little fleet; and it proved a very ſeaſonable ſupply, for our proviſion was conſiderably diminiſhed, and we had been badly fed for a long time. Theſe two fiſhing veſſels, being bound to Bayonne, would of courſe arrive in port before us; and I availed myſelf of the opportunity to inform my family, and my friends in Holland, of my near arrival.

On the thirtieth we ſaw ſeveral parts of a wreck, and, among the reſt, a maſt almoſt whole, which came along-ſide of our ſhip. This ſad ſpectacle announced to us that ſome calamity had happened during the laſt ſtorm.

At length, on the firſt of November, we came in ſight of the coaſts of Europe, and were inceſſantly beaten about by contrary winds, till we reached the chops of the Channel, where we were ſtopped, with more than two hundred other veſſels, returning from all parts of the globe, and which were detained there, as well as ourſelves, by contrary winds. But what was our ſurpriſe, when the Middelbourg, which we had ſuppoſed to have been loſt off the Cape of Needles with all her crew, appeared among the number! In the exceſs of my joy, I would have taken one of the boats and gone to her; but the ſea was ſo rough that none of the ſailors would venture to row me; it was indeed tremendous. The unfortunate Middelbourg appeared to me to be in a worſe condition than ourſelves, and to be almoſt ſhattered to pieces. She looked, ſo to ſpeak, like an invalid whom a relapſe would infallibly deſtroy. Nobody would join me in this ſad preſage; yet it was the ſame day verified.

Scarcely had we entered the Channel, when a great miſt aroſe. It every moment grew thicker; and the wind began to blow a ſtorm,

which preſently roſe to ſuch a height, that all the ſkill of our ſeamen was of no avail againſt its fury. Wave after wave dróve us precipitately towards the rocks; while, on account of the miſt, we could ſcarcely ſee each other, as if Heaven had intended to ſave us the agony of beholding twenty ſhipwrecks at once. We had not only the breakers to fear, but to dread alſo running foul of one another; for the Channel was covered with veſſels. I cannot convey a better idea of the fury of the wind thus let looſe upon us, than by obſerving that our ſails, though furled, were torn to rags, and our rigging abſolutely blown to tow. I conſidered death as inevitable, and awaited it in ſilence. Twenty veſſels, driven by their ill fate either againſt each other or upon the rocks, were loſt. The Middelbourg was wrecked on the ſhore, and the huſband, wife, and children, all periſhed together. Another veſſel of our fleet, the Holland, loſt her rudder, which was broken and carried away by a wave. Become the ſport of the winds and waves, and unable to ſteer her courſe, ſhe made ſignals of diſtreſs, which we anſwered by the ſignals of death. To add to our misfortunes,

misfortunes, night came upon us with our rigging all in diſorder. The Holland fired ſeveral more guns, and, when day appeared, nothing was to be ſeen of her *. For our parts, we paſſed the Channel, and advanced, tempeſt-beaten all the way, towards the Iſle of Middelbourg, where we anchored in ſight of land. But the cable ſoon parted, as did thoſe of all the anchors we threw out, one after another; ſo that we were forced to paſs another terrible night, beating to windward on a coaſt full of ſhoals. Skilful as our captain was, he durſt not take upon himſelf to enter the port without a coaſting pilot. The captain of the port, Intanker, perceiving our diſtreſs from the town of Middelbourg, had the courage to venture himſelf in a ſmall ſloop, and came to our aſſiſtance through every danger. He got on board and took the command of the veſſel, and carried her ſtraight into the port of Fluſhing. We were driven in by ſo ſtrong a gale, that we lay almoſt on our beam-ends. I was in the cabin, I heard a cry "We are all loſt!" I ran upon deck.

* I afterwards heard, that this veſſel was miraculouſly driven into an Engliſh harbour and ſaved.

In

In fact we had ſtruck, but by good fortune it was on the mud: had it been fifty paces lower, the veſſel muſt have gone to pieces. She lay on her ſide; and in that ſituation we paſſed the night.

When day appeared, the weather was more moderate. Twenty boats came to tow us off, and get us afloat. At length we entered the road of Fluſhing; where, which was ſingular enough, we anchored along-ſide of the Held Voltemaade, the very veſſel that had carried me to the Cape of Good Hope, and which the Dutch Eaſt-India Company had purchaſed from the Engliſh, by whom ſhe was taken, as every one knows, on her departure from the Cape for the Iſle of Ceylon. In the morning the commiſſioners of the company of Zealand came on board. One of them brought me letters from Amſterdam, in anſwer to thoſe which I had written at ſea, and ſent by the fiſhing veſſels. Temminck had recommended me to the directors of the company, who received me with every civility; and my baggage was ſuffered to paſs untouched. The moment I ſet my foot on ſhore, I hired a ſmall veſſel, to convey myſelf and my effects

effects to Amſterdam without delay; where, the moment I arrived, I haſtened to throw myſelf into the arms of my good friends, Boers and Temminck. A few days after, I ſet off for Paris, where I arrived in the beginning of January 1785, after an abſence of five years: the only period of my life truly to be regretted, the only one at leaſt in which the cowardice of mankind never affected me, in which I could ſafely defy their injuſtice, their benefits, and their tyrannic ſway.

END OF THE THIRD AND LAST VOLUME.

00086017

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 15 June, 2016